OPENING SESSION
1. Approval of the Agenda
   Steven Dew
2. Comments from the Chair (no documents)
   Steven Dew

CONSENT AGENDA
3. Approval of the Open Session Minutes of September 25, 2019
   Steven Dew
4. Renaming of Learning Services to Library and Museums
   (for information)
   Motion: To Approve consent agenda

ACTION ITEMS
5. Canadian Centre for Welding and Joining (CCWJ)
   Motion: To Approve with Delegated Authority
   Fraser Forbes
   Patricio Mendez
   Goetz Dapp
6. Centre for Healthy Schools
   Motion: To Approve with Delegated Authority
   Douglas Gleddie
   Lynn McGarvey
7. Proposal for Joint Doctoral Degree Programs, University of Alberta
   (Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research) and four Indian Institutions
   of Technology (IIT): Roorke, Bombay, Kharagpur, and Madras, India
   Motion: To Approve with Delegated Authority
   Janice Causgrove Dunn
   Danielle Scott
8. Proposed Terms of Reference for the Academic Planning Committee
   Working Group on the Facilitation of Clinical Research
   Motion: To Approve
   Matthias Ruth
   Alex Clark
   and Bursaries for Students Policy Suite in UAPPOL
   Motion: To Recommend General Faculties Council Approval
   Melissa Padfield

DISCUSSION ITEMS
10. Recommendations of the GFC Executive’s ad hoc Committee on
    Program Approval Pathways (materials to follow)
    Tammy Hopper
11. Institutional Risk Summary Update
    Philip Stack
    Andrew Leitch
12. 2018/19 Student Financial Support Annual Report  
   Melissa Padfield

13. Report from APC cross-representative on Facilities Development Committee (FDC) (no documents)  
   Christopher Mackay

14. Budget Update  
   Steven Dew

15. Question Period  
   Steven Dew

INFORMATION REPORTS

16. Items Approved by GFC Academic Planning Committee by email ballots (no items to date)

17. Information Items Forwarded to Committee Members Between Meetings (no items to date)

CLOSING SESSION

18. Next Meeting: November 6, 2019

19. Next Meeting of General Faculties Council: November 25, 2019

Presenter(s):
Steven Dew  Provost and Vice-President (Academic), Chair, Academic Planning Committee
Fraser Forbes  Dean, Faculty of Engineering
Patricio Mendez  Director of CCWJ & Professor of Chemical and Materials Engineering
Goetz Dapp  Associate Director of CCWJ
Douglas Gleddie  Associate Chair, Department of Elementary Education
Lynn Mcgarvey  Vice Dean, Faculty of Education
Janice Causgrove Dunn  Associate Dean, Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research
Danielle Scott  Director of International Relations, University of Alberta International
Alex Clark  Associate Vice-President (Research and Innovation)
Melissa Padfield  Vice-Provost and Registrar (Interim)
Tammy Hopper  Vice-Provost (Programs)
Philip Stack  Associate Vice-President (Risk Management Services)
Andrew Leitch  Director, ERM Programs
Christopher Mackay  Cross representative of APC serving on FDC

Documentation was before members unless otherwise noted.

Meeting REGRETS to:  David Epp, 780-492-4780, david.epp@ualberta.ca
Prepared by:  Meg Brolley, GFC Secretary
University Governance  www.governance.ualberta.ca
OPENING SESSION

1. Approval of the Agenda

Materials before members are contained in the official meeting file.

Motion: Elian/Andersen

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>THAT the GFC Academic Planning Committee approve the Agenda.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CARRIED</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Comments from the Chair (no documents)

Presenter(s): Steven Dew, Provost and Vice-President (Academic), and Chair, GFC APC

The Chair noted that the Presidential Search Committee is seeking input; he directed members to the email link that was distributed on September 24, 2019.

The Chair also noted that the the international tuition changes considered on September 11 have since been recommended by the Board Finance and Property Committee for approval by the Board of Governors on October 18, 2019.

CONSENT AGENDA

Consent Agenda Mover and Seconder: Padfield/Tse

3. Approval of the Open Session Minutes of September 11, 2019

Materials before members are contained in the official meeting file.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>THAT the GFC Academic Planning Committee approve the Open Session Minutes of September 11, 2019.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CARRIED</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4. **Proposed Changes to the calendar language for the Faculty of Graduate Studies Professional Development Requirement for Department of Educational Psychology**

Materials before members are contained in the official meeting file.

*Purpose of the Proposal:* The proposal is before the committee because FGSR is clarifying the calendar language for the Professional Development Requirement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>THAT the GFC Academic Planning Committee, with delegated authority from General Faculties Council, approve the proposed revisions to the calendar language for the FGSR Professional Development requirement in the Graduate Programs calendar entry for the Department of Educational Psychology as set forth in Attachment 1, to take effect upon approval and to be published in the 2020-2021 Calendar.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CARRIED</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ACTION ITEMS**

5. **Proposed Name Change for the Vice-President (Research) Portfolio to Vice-President (Research and Innovation) Portfolio**

Materials before members are contained in the official meeting file.

*Presenter(s):* Steven Dew, Provost and Vice-President (Academic), and Chair, GFC APC

*Purpose of the Proposal:* To change the name of the Vice-President (Research) portfolio to align with current responsibilities and to highlight the importance of innovation within the research enterprise.

*Discussion:* Dr Dew provided an overview of the proposal noting that a revised position description for the Vice-President (Research and Innovation) was approved by the Board Human Resources and Compensation Committee on July 29, 2019. He indicated that the name change reflects the increasing expectations from internal and external stakeholders of the importance of innovation in research.

Members discussed the use and meaning of innovation in the title, the use of innovation nationally to represent a number of outcomes including knowledge translation and research mobilization, it underscores other things that change because of research and the impact of research, and that the term innovation attempts to encompass research creativity.

The Office of the Vice-President (Research and Innovation) agreed to present clearer information on innovation in future communications and on their website.

*Motion:* Beard/Bhatnagar

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>THAT GFC Academic Planning Committee, acting under delegated authority from General Faculties Council, approve the name change of the current Vice-President (Research) portfolio to Vice-President (Research and Innovation) portfolio.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CARRIED</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DISCUSSION ITEMS**

6. **Recommendations of the GFC Executive’s ad hoc Committee on Program Approval Pathways (no documents)**

*Presenter(s):* Tammy Hopper, Vice-Provost (Programs), Chair GFC Executive ad hoc Committee on Program Approval Pathways
Dr Hopper provided an overview of the GFC Executive’s ad hoc Committee on Program Approval Pathways recommendations for early consultation. She noted that, of the 48 recommendations of the ad hoc Committee on Academic Governance including Delegated Authority, 11 were related to program approvals. While some of the 11 recommendations had been addressed through changes to committee terms of reference, the Transition Committee, charged with implementing the ad hoc recommendations, had advised GFC Executive that further work was required to achieved the efficiencies and effectiveness envisioned. GFC Executive thus established an ad hoc Committee on Program Approval Pathways. Dr Hopper provided information on the ad hoc committee, including its mandate, terms of reference, membership, and timelines.

She presented the following recommendations for comment:
1) Establish a new GFC Standing Committee—the GFC Programs Committee that would consolidate the work on programs currently under the responsibility of Academic Planning Committee (APC), Academic Standards Committee (ASC), GFC Executive and GFC Policy Manual Section 37, and would reside in the Provost’s or Registrar’s office.
2) Change Terms of Reference for APC and GFC Executive to remove components of program approval.
3) Rescind GFC Policy Manual Section 37.
4) Disband ASC and the ASC Subcommittee on Standards.

In response to a question, Dr Hopper noted that when she presented this proposal to ASC, ASC members were supportive of the proposal in general and were assured that the committee’s work would continue to be done but in a different forum. She emphasized that it was important not to lose the value that the Associate Deans bring, and noted that the Associate Deans undergraduate also meet in an administrative committee where they discuss undergraduate items.

Other comments and questions from members included, but were not limited to: support for having all the program issues in one committee to make it more efficient and less confusing for program proposers; the process for program termination and suspension; the continued role of APC for program proposals with financial or resource implications, and program issues of institutional significance; the role of FGSR on graduate program approvals; the need to monitor the resulting changes in committee workloads; the need to ensure that administrative assistance is available to proponents; and support for the rescission of GFC Policy Manual Section 37 as it is antiquated, administratively burdensome and may be in conflict with current policies.

7. Budget Update (no documents)

Presenters: Steven Dew, Provost and Vice-President (Academic), and Chair, GFC APC; Gitta Kulczycki, Vice-President (Finance and Administration)

The Chair provided some timelines for receiving the budget letter noting that the provincial budget will be announced on October 24, 2019. He noted that, in lieu of a budget letter to date, government has provided interim allocations to October 30.

Ms Kulczycki presented a chart describing several scenarios if there are reductions in the Campus Alberta grant and possible levers related to revenue and expenses.

Members asked questions and expressed opinions including but not limited to: potential for reductions on academic and administrative side; impact on infrastructure projects; philanthropic donations; lobbying efforts with government; differential cuts; additional impacts for health faculties that receive funding through Alberta Health Services; program coordination internally and externally; university mandate; and APC’s role in discussion on resource allocation.

8. Question Period

Presenters: Steven Dew, Provost and Vice-President (Academic), and Chair, GFC APC

There were no questions.
INFORMATION REPORTS

9. Items Approved by GFC Academic Planning Committee by email ballots
   There were no items.

10. Information Items Forwarded to Committee Members Between Meetings
    There were no items.

CLOSING SESSION

11. Adjournment

   The Chair adjourned the meeting at 3:35 p.m.
Governance Executive Summary  
Advice, Discussion, Information Item

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agenda Title</th>
<th>Renaming Learning Services to Library and Museums</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Proposed by</th>
<th>Presenter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dale Askey, Vice-Provost (Learning Services) and Chief Librarian</td>
<td>Dale Askey, Vice-Provost (Learning Services) and Chief Librarian</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Provost and Vice-President (Academic)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Purpose of the Proposal is (please be specific)</td>
<td>To share, for the information of APC, that the name change for Learning Services (as discussed with APC in September) has now been approved by the Provost and Vice-President (Academic).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executive Summary (outline the specific item – and remember your audience)</td>
<td>Rationale for this change includes that the name for Learning Services does not accurately communicate the constitution or the scope of the units within the portfolio. Learning Services emerged from historical antecedents that no longer pertain. We seek to rename the portfolio to indicate clearly the major components and activities. While this is primarily a nomenclature change in service of clarity and accuracy, the current name Learning Services creates a fair amount of confusion for external audiences, in particular our donor base. Libraries and museums are well grounded concepts in our culture, as such, we should communicate what we do to potential donors using this name. Learning Services requires explanation, which detracts from our ability to connect donor interests and our needs. This aligns with Objective 22, securing and stewarding resources, as well as with Objective 16, enhancing community relations. The attached proposal outlines the full rationale and details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supplementary Notes and context</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Engagement and Routing (Include proposed plan) | |
| Consultation and Stakeholder Participation | The Libraries have discussed this change internally via the Libraries’ Strategic Leadership Team, as well as with the directors of the Museums, Copyright Office, Bookstore, and Technology Training Centre. Consultation was also undertaken with the Committee on the Learning Environment, APC, Vice-Provosts’ Council, and Deans’ Council. |

| Strategic Alignment | |
|---------------------| |
| Alignment with For the Public Good | Objective 22, securing and stewarding resources  
Objective 16, enhancing community relations |
| Alignment with Institutional Risk Indicator | Please note below the specific institutional risk(s) this proposal is addressing.  
☐ Enrolment Management  
☐ Faculty and Staff  
☒ Funding and Resource Management  
☐ IT Services, Software and Hardware  
☐ Leadership and Change  
☐ Physical Infrastructure  
☒ Relationship with Stakeholders  
☒ Reputation  
☐ Research Enterprise  
☐ Safety  
☐ Student Success |
Item No. 4

| Legislative Compliance and jurisdiction | Post-Secondary Learning Act |

Attachments
1. Proposal to Rename Learning Services
2. Approval of renaming by Provost, October 10, 2019 memo

*Prepared by: Dr. Dale Askey, Vice-Provost (Learning Services) and Chief Librarian, daskey@ualberta.ca >*
Proposal to Rename Learning Services

Portfolio name

The current name of the portfolio that encompasses the Libraries, Museums, Bookstore, Technology Training Centre, and Copyright Office stems from a 1990s precedent, Learning Systems. At that time, the Libraries resided in a portfolio that included a variety of units including those responsible for campus IT and for campus classrooms. Those units exited the portfolio many years ago and for some time the major components of the portfolio currently known as Learning Services have been the Libraries and Museums.

Learning Services is a name that does not describe in any precise way the activities of these units. In fact, it creates a fair measure of confusion with other portfolios, e.g., the Vice Provost for Learning Initiatives and the Centre for Teaching and Learning. Given that its historical precedent lies far in the past and it does not accurately reflect the scope of the current portfolio, we propose that Learning Services be renamed to Library and Museums. These two units represent the major components--in terms of budget, human capital, and reach--of the portfolio. This name clearly communicates, using language understood by all, the focus of the portfolio. It is also common to speak of memory institutions--libraries, museums, archives, and galleries--as entities closely related by virtue of their similar missions. Given this affinity, it is logical to assume that Libraries and Museums will remain in one portfolio, hence the proposed name should endure into the distant future.

The Copyright Office, Bookstore, and Technology Training Centre remain part of the portfolio, but attempting to find a name under which all five elements could unite proves challenging unless one resorts to generic names that would only sow further confusion.

Renaming portfolio components

Changing the portfolio name presents a window of opportunity to make small refinements to the names used for the Libraries and Museums. At large universities with complex library systems across multiple locations and/or campuses, there are instances where the entire system falls under the singular form Library while others, such as the U of A at present, use the plural Libraries. The latter creates persistent confusion, primarily in written communications where many use the plural form yet a singular verb form, creating awkward constructions. This also occurs, to a lesser degree, in verbal communication. To rectify this grammatical confusion, but also to underscore our desire to instill a culture of increased collaboration across all of our libraries and locations, we propose renaming the University of Alberta Libraries to the University of Alberta Library.
Somewhat similarly, there exist two names for Museums and we seek to simplify that to a single canonical name. On general communications as well as on signage around campus, the Museums are referred to by the name **University of Alberta Museums**. In other venues, however, the name Museums and Collections Services appears. We propose retiring this latter name as it serves no useful or distinguishing purpose vis-à-vis the other name.

**Naming hierarchy**

**Portfolio:** Library and Museums

**Member units:**
- University of Alberta Library
- University of Alberta Museums
- Copyright Office
- Bookstore
- Technology Training Centre

**Related changes:**

Vice Provost (Learning Services) and Chief Librarian becomes **Vice Provost (Library and Museums) and Chief Librarian**

Executive Director (Learning Services) and Deputy Chief Librarian becomes **Executive Director (Library and Museums) and Deputy Chief Librarian**

Similarly, several other positions with Learning Services in the job title would see this replaced by **Library and Museums**.
Date: October 10, 2019

To: Dale Askey
   Vice-Provost (Library and Museums) and Chief Librarian

From: Steven Dew
   Provost and Vice-President (Academic)

Re: Position Title and Portfolio Name Change

I am pleased to provide my approval of the proposed name change for the Vice-Provost portfolio of Learning Services, as follows:

   Former Name: Learning Services
   New Name: Library and Museums

I understand that a number of other changes to units within the portfolio will also occur as a part of this initiative, including the change from University of Alberta Libraries to University of Alberta Library, and retirement of the name Museums and Collections Services in favour of University of Alberta Museums.

I also approve the proposed title change for your role, as follows:

   Former Title: Vice-Provost (Learning Services) and Chief Librarian
   New Title: Vice-Provost (Library and Museums) and Chief Librarian

I understand that some other position title changes for roles in Library and Museums will follow.

I commend you for the work that you have done to engage with your team and with the broader community to identify a new name for the unit that reflects its core activities, that is practical and effective, and that seeks to build collaboration and unity internally. Thank you for the time that you have taken to consult with the University community, including governance bodies, on this change. I hope that that consultation has helped you to raise the profile of your portfolio and its important work.

Steven Dew

c President's Executive Committee – Operations

U:\AD01-NAM-AP
**Governance Executive Summary**

**Action Item**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agenda Title</th>
<th>Canadian Centre for Welding and Joining (CCWJ)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Motion**

THAT GFC Academic Planning Committee, acting with delegated authority from General Faculties Council, approve the establishment of the Canadian Centre for Welding and Joining (CCWJ) as an academic institute at the University of Alberta.

**Item**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action Requested</th>
<th>☒ Approval</th>
<th>☐ Recommendation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposed by</td>
<td>Fraser Forbes, Dean, Faculty of Engineering</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Presenter(s)     | Fraser Forbes, Dean, Faculty of Engineering  
|                  | Patricio Mendez, Director of CCWJ & Professor of Chemical and Materials Engineering  
|                  | Goetz Dapp, Associate Director of CCWJ |

**Details**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Responsibility</th>
<th>Faculty of Engineering</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Purpose of the Proposal is <em>please be specific</em></td>
<td>The proposal is before the committee for approval after being forwarded by the Faculty of Engineering and reviewed by the Centres and Institutes Committee.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Executive Summary *outline the specific item – and remember your audience* | **Strategic impact:** The CCWJ will fill a gap in Western Canada and offer an interdisciplinary resource to create and disseminate in-depth knowledge in the areas of materials joining, welding specifications and design, metallurgy, and joining process development. These areas are central to the development of manufacturing, construction, and natural resources in Alberta and Canada at large. The CCWJ will equal or surpass existing facilities worldwide in terms of the scope of its interdisciplinary research, state-of-the-art infrastructure, collaboration with industry, and education and training of welding engineering and researchers.  

The CCWJ **addresses a need** in these industries by providing expertise in multiple disciplines to develop knowledge and technologies to increase productivity, lower costs, and find new applications (diversification). The CCWJ will provide a framework to promote and make accessible the welding expertise at the UofA in many different disciplines beyond the particular expertise of its members, and provide a forum to interact with associations and professional societies. It will **enhance the training and experience of students** in an environment fostering EDI and **strengthen the position of researchers** by reducing the duplication of efforts and providing credibility to early-career researchers and established researchers who are expanding their focus in an interdisciplinary context.  

2020 will mark the 10th anniversary of the Welding Research Lab which was established through an industry initiative, the Weldco/Industry Chair in Welding and Joining, which anticipated the development of the CCWJ. The lab has consistently grown and developed an interdisciplinary network of researchers. This has included two large grants from WED, including a $1.75 million project shared with AITF, and an ongoing 5-year $1.1 million-project that brings together welding and automation expertise.
Item No. 5

| Supplementary Notes and context | <This section is for use by University Governance only to outline governance process.>

**Engagement and Routing** (Include meeting dates)

Consultation and Stakeholder Participation (parties who have seen the proposal and in what capacity)

<For information on the protocol see the Governance Resources section Student Participation Protocol>

Those who are actively participating:
- Faculty of Engineering
- Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering

Those who have been consulted:
- Chair of the Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering
- Dean of the Faculty of Engineering
- Centres and Institutes Committee
- Associate Vice President (Research) and Associate Vice President (Academic), Randy Goebel

Those who have been informed:
- Industrial Advisory Board
- Collaborators and stakeholders

Approval Route (Governance) (including meeting dates)

GFC Academic Planning Committee – October 23, 2019

**Strategic Alignment**

Alignment with *For the Public Good*

Please note the Institutional Strategic Plan objective(s)/strategies the proposal supports.

Alignment with Core Risk Area

Please note below the specific institutional risk(s) this proposal is addressing.

- Enrolment Management
- Faculty and Staff
- Funding and Resource Management
- IT Services, Software and Hardware
- Leadership and Change
- Physical Infrastructure
- Relationship with Stakeholders
- Reputation
- Research Enterprise
- Safety
- Student Success

Legislative Compliance and jurisdiction

Post-secondary Learning Act
GFC Academic Planning Committee terms of reference
Centres & Institutes Policy and Establishment Procedure

1. Attachment 1 (Proposal for the establishment of CCWJ, incl. letter of support – Faculty of Engineering)

*Prepared by:* Goetz Dapp, Associate Director CCWJ, dapp@ualberta.ca
# University of Alberta Template for Proposals to Establish New Academic Centres and Institutes

Proposers will complete and submit this template to the Office of the Provost for approval in accordance with UAPPOL Policy. This template may be used in two ways:

1) As a cover document attached to a completed proposal which has already been approved by the University for submission for external funding. In this case, the template must present the academic arguments for establishing an academic centre or institute, and provide required information that is absent from the original proposal.

2) As an expandable template to be completed. In this case, the completed template may be up to 8 to 10 pages in length (not including letters of support or other appendices relevant to the proposal).

Before developing a proposal and completing this template, please contact the Office of the Provost to discuss the scope of the proposed initiative and to discuss steps for review under the UAPPOL Centres and Institutes Policy, as well as associated procedures for academic centres and institutes – [www.uappol.ualberta.ca](http://www.uappol.ualberta.ca).

## 1. Faculty Dean Signature

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signature:</th>
<th>Date:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>See attached memo (Dr. F. Forbes)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 2. Name of the Proposed Centre or Institute

- See attached memo (F. Forbes)
- See attached proposal, section 2. Name of the Proposed Centre

## 3. Academic Justification for Establishment of a Centre or Institute

- Define the vision and purpose of the proposed unit
- Demonstrate that the proposed Centre/Institute does not duplicate other efforts at the University
- Document the emerging or established excellence of the group of faculty involved, and describe how the proposed Centre or Institute will position the University of Alberta as a national and international leader
- See attached proposal, section 3. Academic Justification for Establishment of a Centre or Institute

## 4. Provide a statement of the priority of the proposed centre or institute within the overall priorities of the Faculty and/or the University of Alberta. Include a statement of benefits the University of Alberta could expect to receive through creation of the proposed centre or institute, including benefits to students.

### a. See attached memo (F. Forbes)
b. See attached proposal, section 4. Statement of Priority and Benefits plus subsections.

## 5. Provide a description of the proposed centre/institute governance structure/reporting lines. Include a diagram of organizational structure.

- See attached proposal section 5. Governance Structure
6. **Provide a statement of the role and qualifications of the centre/institute lead of the proposed centre or institute.**

   - See attached proposal section 6. *Role and Qualifications of the Centre Lead*

7. **Employees**
   a) Provide a statement of the employment status of employees (i.e., are they University of Alberta employees?)
   b) Specific source(s) of any “University funding” must be identified
   c) Personnel expenditures must include adequate provisions for benefit costs, salary settlements, and other escalating factors.

   - See attached proposal section 7. *Employees*

8. **Financial Plan**
   a) Include key sources of operating funds, and include revenue sources and expenditures for [ideally] 5 years projected.
   b) State specific source(s) of any “University funding”
   c) Provide a plan for the sustainable funding of the operation of the centre or institute (salaries, equipment and maintenance, IT support [data management, web design, etc.])
   d) Escalation factors must be built into expenditure projections (i.e. escalation due to inflation, future salary settlements, etc.)
   e) If in-kind support is identified, the specifics of that support must be listed separately.

   - See attached proposal section 8. *Financial Plan*

9. **Space Requirements.**
   Space required? Yes [ ] No [X]

   If “No” selected, where is current space? **CME L1-108, CME L1-120, CME L1-118, CME 5-133**

   If “Yes” selected, complete the following:
   - On-site at the University of Alberta
   - Awaiting allocation
   - Rent/lease required

   If rent/lease is required, has this been budgeted for? Yes [ ] No [X]

Is funding required? Yes [ ] No [X] Reasons: See attached proposal, section Budget

Address the following questions:
   a) If rent/lease or license is required, what is the University of Alberta’s commitment?
   b) If new space or modifications to existing space are required, has Facilities and Operations been contacted and has this been included in the budget?

   - No new space is required beyond what has already been committed by the Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering.
   - Details are provided in the attached proposal section 9. *Space Requirements and Equipment*
### 10. Potential Risks to the University of Alberta

- a) State any reputational, financial, and/or operational risks to the University of Alberta.
- b) Outline plans to mitigate/manage those risks.
- c) Risk Management Services may be consulted.

  - See attached proposal section 10. Potential Risks to the UofA

### 11. Annual Reporting and Strategic Review: In accordance with UAPPOL Policy

- a) State a provision for annual reporting to the Reporting Dean
- b) State a provision for annual reporting to the Office of the Provost
- c) State a provision for strategic and operational review by the Reporting Dean (or delegate) at no less frequency than every five years.

  - See attached proposal section 11. Annual Reporting and Strategic Review

### 12. Intellectual Property (IP) and Copyright

- a) Will any copyright or patentable IP be created, and if so, how will it be handled?
- b) How will ownership and commercialization of IP be handled?

  - See attached proposal section 12. Intellectual Property (IP) and Copyright

### 13. Termination Plan/Provisions

- a) Exigency plan for termination: If physical and/or financial resources will remain upon termination, a plan for consultation with donors or agencies associated with the centre or institute must be included in the dissolution plan.

  - See attached proposal section 13. Termination Plan / Provisions

### 14. Letters of Support

- Attach letters from relevant on- and off-campus sources

  - See attached proposal section 14. Letters of Support

### 15. Agreements and MOUs between the University of Alberta and its partner(s)

- Provide, if applicable, any **agreements and/or memoranda of understanding between the University of Alberta and its partner(s)** to establish, fund and operate the proposed academic centre or institute.

  - See attached proposal section 15. Agreements and MOUs between the UofA and partners
October 11, 2019

Dr. Steven Dew
Provost and Vice-President (Academic)
University of Alberta
2-40 South Academic Building (SAB)
University of Alberta
Edmonton, AB  T6G 2G7
Canada

Re: Proposal for Academic Centre “Canadian Centre for Welding and Joining”

Dear Dr. Dew:

In this letter, we propose to create the Canadian Centre for Welding and Joining (CCWJ) as an academic centre at the University of Alberta.

The CCWJ will elevate Canadian welding and joining research to a competitive level equal to any European, American, and Asian facilities. The CCWJ will host interdisciplinary engineering and science research including, metallurgy, heat transfer, fluid mechanics, plasma physics, solid mechanics, computer and mathematical modeling, and human factors, all for welding-related applications. The creation of the CCWJ aims at fostering welding research at UofA in general, and its scope extends far beyond any specific application.

The CCWJ will be hosted at the Faculty of Engineering, Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering. This centre will be instrumental in fulfilling the mandate of the existing Weldco/Industry Chair in Welding and Joining: “the creation and dissemination of knowledge in the areas of materials joining, welding specifications and design, and joining process development” to “ensure that Canada holds a pre-eminent position as a leader in research and development, education and application of welding and joining technologies.” The Weldco/Industry Chair in Welding and Joining has an industrial advisory board composed of key companies in Alberta, Canada, and Internationally: Weldco Companies, Acklands Grainger, Canadian Welding Bureau, CESSCO Fabrication and Engineering, Lincoln Electric Company of Canada, Metal Fabricators & Welding Ltd., Miller Electric, Suncor Energy, and Syncrude Canada. The scope of contributions arising within the CCWJ will be Canada-wide, and its goal is global recognition. The current holder of the Weldco/Industry Chair in Welding and Joining is Professor Patricio F. Mendez, and he is the proposed founding director of the CCWJ.

Current welding research operations are collaborative and interdisciplinary in nature, including collaborations within the Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering, extending to the Departments of Mechanical Engineering, the Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering, and the Faculty of Medicine. Currently the CCWJ has 12 ongoing collaborations across the UofA with projects
such as the impact of welding fumes on female welders, process control, advanced automation, specialized statistics, and machine learning/artificial intelligence (see Table 1). In addition, the CCWJ has brought 2 renowned Adjunct Professors to the UofA (John Goldak, Carleton University and Duane Miller, Lincoln Electric Company), and has currently 5 international collaborations with 6 co-supervised graduate students in Germany, Mexico, Japan, Argentina, and China (see Table 2).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Faculty / Department</th>
<th>Research Topic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Leijun Li</td>
<td>Chem. Mat. Eng. (CME)</td>
<td>Metallurgy of welding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tim Joseph</td>
<td>Mining Engineering</td>
<td>Wear-resistant overlays in mining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Richard Sydora</td>
<td>Physics</td>
<td>Plasma physics of the welding arc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bernadette Quemerais</td>
<td>Preventive Medicine</td>
<td>Emissions of welding processes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nicola Cherry</td>
<td>Preventive Medicine</td>
<td>Impact of welding fumes on female welders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vinay Prasad</td>
<td>CME</td>
<td>Predictive process control for GMAW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carlos Cervera</td>
<td>Infectious Diseases</td>
<td>Advanced statistical methodologies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rafiq Ahmad</td>
<td>Mechanical Engineering</td>
<td>Industry 4.0, advanced manufacturing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eleni Strouia</td>
<td>Computing Science</td>
<td>Machine learning, artificial intelligence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horacio Marquez</td>
<td>Electr. Comp. Eng. (ECE)</td>
<td>Complex non-linear systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biao Huang</td>
<td>CME</td>
<td>Process control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirish Shah</td>
<td>CME</td>
<td>Convolutional neural networks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John Goldak</td>
<td>CME (adjunct) / Carleton</td>
<td>Welding simulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duane Miller</td>
<td>CME (adjunct)</td>
<td>Design of welded connections</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1: Collaborations with UofA researchers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Institution</th>
<th>Research Topic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Michael Rethmeier</td>
<td>Fraunhofer Germany</td>
<td>Advanced materials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motomichi Yamamoto</td>
<td>Hiroshima University</td>
<td>Hybrid laser hotwire welding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marco Ramirez</td>
<td>UNAM Mexico</td>
<td>Plasmas in welding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mirco Chapetti</td>
<td>CONICET Argentina</td>
<td>Fatigue life of laser additive manufacturing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shujun Chen</td>
<td>Beijing Univ. of Tech.</td>
<td>Metal transfer and droplet temperature</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2: Collaborations with international researchers

The existing physical infrastructure and facilities for the proposed CCWJ is unique in Canada, and superior to most other university welding research operations worldwide. The CCWJ will be hosted in a $5M laboratory facility opened in May 5, 2010 (CME L1-108). Some of the equipment, such as dedicated high speed welding videography, hydrogen testing, dilatometry, and instrumented impact testing are either unique or one of two units existing in Canada. The current facilities have been used for welding research projects sponsored by funding institutions including NSERC, Defense Canada, Auto21, for industrial research involving Syncrude, Hitachi, Wilkinson Steel, and many more, and for service to industry in large and small projects. In addition, the facilities have been used for open labs in the context of AMFI (an outreach program aiming at welding education in SMEs), for teaching undergraduate and graduate students, for lab facilities available to the University of Alberta community, and for demonstrations at
the University of Alberta Open House and Engineering Expo. Both the provincial and federal government have been actively involved in developing the facilities proposed for the CCWJ. Especially notable are two grants from Western Economic Diversification, a $1.5M equipment grant (led by UofA and shared with AITF) and a current $1.1M equipment grant (led by UofA) that will be officially announced shortly.

The unique nature of academic collaborations and infrastructure, as well as its high level of exposure to current and prospective partners across Canada and internationally, create a need for the Canadian Centre for Welding and Joining to be a recognizable entity to partners and institutions inside and outside UofA.

The CCWJ infrastructure is self-sustaining through a consistent track record of research and equipment grants, service to industry, and materials donations from industrial partners. For example, specialty gases are provided free of charge by Praxair, all steel provided free of charge by Supreme Steel and Weldco Companies, and all welding electrodes and other consumables provided by Lincoln Electric. A part-time administrative assistant has been funded consistently since the opening of the lab with the help of the provincial government, Productivity Alberta, and service to industry. There is no other indirect cost involved with the facilities, and no funding from UofA is needed now or in the future.

In summary, the Faculty of Engineering hosts a unique facility and a deep talent pool for welding research that is closely associated with industrial and academic partners in Alberta, Canada, and worldwide. Creating the “Canadian Centre for Welding and Joining” will greatly facilitate the Centre’s operation and further the profile of welding and joining at the University of Alberta, and serve to further enhance the reputation of our University as a globe leading institution.

Sincerely,

J. Fraser Forbes, PhD, PEng
Dean of Engineering
October 2019

Proposal to the
Academic Planning Committee

Canadian Centre for Welding and Joining

Digital version at http://bit.ly/ccwj_uofa (accessible only for UofA email address)

Submitted from the
Faculty of Engineering,
University of Alberta,
Edmonton, Alberta
Proposal to establish a new Academic Centre: Canadian Centre for Welding and Joining (CCWJ)

1. Name and Faculty of Reporting Dean

**Dr. Fraser Forbes, Faculty of Engineering**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signature:</th>
<th>Date:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>see attached memo</td>
<td>October 11, 2019</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Name of the Proposed Centre

The proposed Centre will be called “Canadian Centre for Welding and Joining” (CCWJ).

3. Academic Justification for Establishment of a Centre or Institute

Welding and Joining are central to the development of manufacturing, construction, and natural resources in Alberta and Canada at large. Welding involves not only the act of welding (which is taught at colleges such as NAIT or SAIT), but also the design and selection of alloys, machinery, and processes. The branches of knowledge needed for welding operations involve metallurgy, physics of plasmas, electrical engineering, computer science, health sciences, logistics, and many more. None of these aspects of welding are dealt in appropriate depth at the colleges, which focus on training welders and technologists, but not inventors and thinkers outside of what is immediately available. Alberta has no institution addressing the deeper aspects of welding, despite the pressing need for this knowledge in the province. When the economic situation is favorable, increases in productivity demand this inexistent knowledge. When the economic situation is challenging, lowering costs and finding new applications are essential for survival. The proposed Canadian Centre for Welding and Joining will fulfill this need for multidisciplinary knowledge beyond the trades.

There is no similar initiative at the UofA, in the province, or in Western Canada at large. Only the University of Waterloo in ON has a welding and joining center with academic focus, but with a narrower scope only within engineering.

The Weldco/Industry Chair was created in 2006 to address this need, and envisioned the establishment of an GFC-recognized academic centre called Canadian Centre for Welding and Joining (CCWJ) with a mandate to create and disseminate knowledge in the areas of materials joining, welding specifications and design, metallurgy, and joining process development. The CCWJ will leverage the momentum created by the $5-million Welding Research Lab (established in 2010 through the Weldco/Industry Chair in Welding and Joining), and provide a collaborative structure that consolidates welding related activities by leveraging existing work instead of the potential duplication of efforts.
The CCWJ will elevate the University of Alberta to a pre-eminent position in research and development, education and application of welding and joining technologies. The CCWJ will equal or surpass existing facilities worldwide in terms of the scope of its interdisciplinary research, state-of-the-art infrastructure, collaboration with industry, and education and training of welding engineering and researchers. The CCWJ will function as an entity to bring together interdisciplinary teams of researchers from UofA and industrial partners to obtain research funding and carry out high-quality research. The CCWJ will provide a framework to promote and make accessible the welding expertise at the UofA in many different disciplines beyond the particular expertise of its members, and provide a forum to interact with associations and professional societies. The CCWJ will strengthen the position of researchers by reducing the duplication of efforts and providing credibility to early-career researchers and established researchers who are expanding their focus in an interdisciplinary context.

The vision and mission statement outlined by the donors for the creation of the Weldco/Industry Chair is in Appendix A: Vision and Mission.

3a. Proposed Activities
The CCWJ will build on the established track record of the Welding Research Lab. The CCWJ will continue the lab’s commitment to teaching and research – combining the deepest, most sophisticated level of fundamental understanding with practical, industry-related and industry-driven applications – and establish a network of excellence in advanced manufacturing around its unique capabilities. Our exceptional connections in the international welding and research community ensure that the industry can benefit from developments that reach far into the future.

The CCWJ will undertake high-quality research on novel welding and joining processes, materials, testing methods, and supporting technologies. The CCWJ will play a key role in introducing advanced and new technologies to industry to drive innovation, increase productivity, and optimize processes and procedures. Research themes are expected to evolve in time depending on the evolution of research and technology, the needs from partners, and the availability of skills at the University of Alberta.

The main application focus of the CCWJ includes manufacturing, equipment manufacturing, metal fabrication, resource-based industries, and oil and gas. The industry expressed a strong desire for such a centre at the UofA and put together the Weldco/Industry endowment in Welding and Joining at the University of Alberta due to its strategic combination of high academic standing, expertise, track record in industrial applications of research, links to the Alberta and federal governments, and geographic location. The CCWJ will fulfill this mandate and function as a liaison among industry, government, equipment manufacturers, consumable manufacturers and the global research community. Through maintaining active international contacts and collaborations, the CCWJ will ensure that Canadian industries have access to the newest developments in technologies and materials. The scope of the CCWJ will include the welding of heavy equipment, petrochemical equipment, energy power plants, and oil and gas pipelines.
Perhaps even greater than industry’s need for new technology is its need for highly qualified personnel (HQP) who are trained in the fundamental principles and technologies of advanced welding and joining. The CCWJ will develop outstanding educational programs in Welding and Joining Engineering to help address this critical need. Undergraduate and graduate programs in Materials Engineering will ensure that graduates have the opportunity to develop specialized skills in welding and joining processes, welding metallurgy, design, safety. Courses currently taught are open to all engineering disciplines, advising and co-advising of students occurs across all engineering departments, and the degrees of MSc and MEng in Welding Engineering are currently offered by the Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering. The formation of a Centre will enable the creation of new training and education offerings within an interdisciplinary context that otherwise would be difficult or impractical to coordinate, and cover areas of advanced/additive manufacturing, welding automation, underlying multiphysics of welding, health and safety aspects, and quality control. Establishing the CCWJ will enhance the training of students, facilitate knowledge exchange, and support skill transfer.

The current training activities also include a highly successful internship and outreach program with international partners and local high schools to attract future generations of students and researchers on both an applied and a theoretical level. A high number of returning interns further indicates the success of the program.

**Table 1: Student Statistics of the Welding Research Lab Since 2010**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Student types and numbers</th>
<th>Number of Research Internships/Apipts</th>
<th>Individual students</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Research Associates and Post-Docs</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Graduate Students</td>
<td>39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Undergraduate (Canada)</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visiting International Students (UG)</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vis. International Students (Graduate)</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High School</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Junior High School</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coop Students</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSERC USRA students</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Research Class</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISWEP</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WISEST students</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total:</strong></td>
<td><strong>322</strong></td>
<td><strong>244</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The CCWJ will also undertake professional development for practicing engineers. Current activities include graduate and undergraduate welding processing and metallurgy courses and annual seminars aimed at people from industry. Since 2010, the lab has hosted 43 seminars with global leaders of industry and academic research for 899 participants from Alberta industry and 1144 academic participants. It has also regularly represented the University of Alberta in tours...
for the Global Academic Leadership Development (GALD) program (213 visitors since 2014), and has hosted high-level dignitaries. Tours hosted for the general public at events such as High School Tours, CWA and AWS Student Chapter tours, UofA Open House and UofA Engineering Expo have brought 3318 visitors since 2012. Photos from these events and quotes from our participants are listed in Appendix D: Photos from events and quotes from our participants.

The formation of the CCWJ will introduce new professional development offerings in the area of advanced manufacturing and welding automation. Plans for the CCWJ include applying for provincial funding for such offerings and establish a formalized professional development program within a network of excellence that will be established around the capabilities of the CCWJ.

On the research side, multi-faculty, interdisciplinary collaborations are already an important component of the activities of the Welding Research Lab. The CCWJ will be an umbrella organization that facilitates and coordinates welding-related activities at University of Alberta across researchers, students, departments (e.g. all departments of Engineering), and schools (e.g. collaborations between Engineering and Medicine on human impact of welding). The CCWJ will be established with a research intensive focus and make available unique equipment to collaborators and partners. The CCWJ will provide a framework to promote and make accessible the welding expertise at the UofA in many different disciplines beyond the particular expertise of its members, and provide a forum to interact with associations and professional societies. The CCWJ will strengthen the position of researchers by providing credibility to early-career researchers and established researchers who are expanding their focus in an interdisciplinary context, and reduce the duplication of efforts. This includes leading research initiatives and providing research management support by the experienced team of the Welding Research Lab.

Examples of ongoing internal interdisciplinary collaborations include Prof. L. Li (Materials Eng., welding metallurgy), Prof. T. Joseph (Mining Eng., wear protection of ground engaging equipment), Prof. R. Sydora (Dept. of Physics, welding plasmas), Prof. N. Cherry and Prof. B. Quémerais (Preventive Medicine, welding fumes), Prof. R. Driver (Civil Eng., welding of steel structures), Prof. V. Prasad (Chem. Eng., control of welding processes), Prof. B. Huang (Chem. Eng., process monitoring and sensor filtering/feedback), Prof. H. Marquez (Electr.Eng., non-linear control theory, with emphasis on stability theory), Prof. W. Chen (Materials Eng., fracture and corrosion of welded materials), Prof. R. Ahmad (Mechanical Eng., automation), and Prof. E. Stroulia (Comp. Sci., machine learning in manufacturing). These collaborations have resulted in the co-teaching of classes, developing a new class on welding metallurgy, the publication of papers, and interdisciplinary co-advising of students (e.g. Physics, Medicine) [see Appendix B: Collaborative Publications and Presentations]. Large-scale projects such as an ongoing 5-year, $1.1 million project to “Develop an advanced manufacturing system for automated repairs of heavy machine components” were funded by Western Economic Diversification (WED) only because of the ongoing internal collaboration, and provide an indication of what the CCWJ will enable.
Establishment of the CCWJ will also provide a structure to enable large-scale external scientific collaborations. Current international interdisciplinary collaborations of the Welding Research Lab include a formal MOU with the University of Hiroshima in Japan, and another MOU with the Federal Materials Research Institute of Germany (BAM). The structure of a formal academic centre is expected to have a large impact on the facilitation of formalized research collaboration with other universities and research centres around the world (RWTH Aachen, particularly ISF and WZL; TU Graz; TU Munich) for which MOUs are either in place (RWTH Aachen) or currently being negotiated (TU Graz). These collaborations involve the areas of advanced manufacturing, Artificial Intelligence and Machine Learning in metal manufacturing, and metallurgy of lightweight application and functional alloys.

Individual international collaborations of the Welding Research Lab include Prof. M. Rethmeier (BAM, Germany, advanced materials and welding processes), Dr. N. Jenkins, MD (Harvard, Preventive Medicine, motor skills), Prof. M. Yamamoto (Hiroshima University, advanced welding processes), Prof. S. Chen (Beijing University of Technology; metal transfer), Prof. M. Ramirez (UNAM Mexico; arc plasma), Prof. J. Goldak (Carleton University, welding simulation), and G. Gött (Leibniz Institute for Plasma Science and Technology, INP Greifswald, welding plasma). These activities have resulted in co-supervision of students, several publications and presentations (Appendix B: Collaborative Publications and Presentations), and the development of new research activities involving Alberta companies (Appendix C: Collaborative Projects). They have also resulted in the appointment of Prof. John Goldak (Carleton U., welding simulation) and Dr. Duane Miller (Lincoln Electric, Cleveland, welding design) as adjunct professors in the Faculty of Engineering. The CCWJ will provide a platform to increase such cross-appointments and benefit the broader academic environment at the UofA.

The formation of the CCWJ will also enable new types of collaboration with the provincial and federal governments. In collaboration with the Government of Alberta, the Welding Research Lab has hosted trade missions for a total of 98 industry participants to the 2009, 2013, and 2017 Schweissen&Schneiden Show in Essen/Düsseldorf, Germany (the largest metal manufacturing and fabrication trade show, which takes place every 4 years), and the 2011, 2015, 2016, and 2017 Fabtech Shows (the annual, largest North American manufacturing and fabrication trade show), and the 2016 CanWeld Conference Expo in Edmonton. As a centre, the CCWJ will make it possible to expand our leadership role to the Federal level and become a “one-stop-shop” for everything welding. Anticipated activities include advising on policy in areas of advanced manufacturing and materials selection, including codes and standards. The ongoing project with WED is a first step in this direction, and has already resulted in several meetings with the Assistant Deputy Minister of Western Economic Diversification. The new possibilities opened up by the NSERC Alliance grants to leverage government funds provide a promising avenue to explore. The CCWJ will use our vast network of contacts within the research community and the whole supply chain of manufacturing and the energy sector to lead nationwide initiatives, participate in initiatives such as the NGen Supercluster, and establish direct links between companies and vendors, and educate companies about technologies and implementation options.
These activities align with federal and provincial initiatives, such as the Department of Western Economic Diversification (WED) Western Canada Growth Strategy “Grow West”, that includes the following pillars:

- Diversification – strengthen the innovation ecosystems, accelerate innovation adoption, embrace technologies that increase productivity, and grow regional economic partnerships
- Skills – develop essential skills that keep pace with change, connect academic skills with practical experience, attract global talent, include and empower western Canadians

These pillars were developed based on findings in the WED “What We Heard” report, which the Welding Research Lab contributed to in several consultations.

Similar goals were a part of the 2018-21 Government of Alberta Business Plan Economic Development and Trade supporting “efforts to make Alberta’s economy competitive, diverse and resilient” (Outcome One) and calling for “the development and attraction of the next generation of innovators” in Alberta’s academic and research institutions to achieve “globally-competitive research excellence in priority areas”:

- Support the growth of globally-competitive enterprises in Alberta through enhanced innovation and technology commercialization programs and partnerships.
- Support the growth of globally-competitive enterprises in Alberta through enhanced innovation and technology
- Promote collaboration that generates economic benefit for Alberta

While the new business plan has not been released, based on the election platform we expect a similar direction of the current government, and the CCWJ will take an active role through participation in consultations, partnerships with the federal and provincial governments and professional societies (Canadian and international) to acquire and disseminate welding knowledge in the complete range from fundamentals to practicing-engineer level, industry support and professional development programs, trade missions, etc.

4. Statement of Priority and Benefits

4a. Importance of Welding

The main challenge of welding as an engineering discipline is that it involves fundamental aspects of many disciplines such as thermodynamics and phase transformations of materials science, heat transfer aspects of mechanical engineering, power electronics of electrical engineering, and materials performance issues of civil and mechanical constructions. Welding is typically “the weakest link” in the chain of structural continuity and it is also the bottleneck in the manufacturing process.

Besides being an essential technology in building construction and metal manufacturing, welding is what holds together the machinery at the core of industries currently essential to the Canadian economy such as oil sands, conventional oil, gas, coal, and mining. Canadian applications are unique in that the harsh environmental conditions often exceed the state of the art of welding
technology. Leading-edge welding expertise is also vital in the automotive and other Canadian manufacturing operations. As the world moves towards a lower carbon future, welding will be essential in renewable energy production. Of note, the Canadian base of expertise in this area is currently thin.

In Alberta, the metal fabrication and machinery manufacturing sectors are integral to the provincial economy. The contributions of these sectors include:

- GDP contribution of more than $4.5 billion (2009)
- GDP contribution of over 2.5% of total Alberta GDP (2002-2009)
- Overall sector wage impact of $4.5 billion (2009)
- Export revenues of greater than $3.5 billion (2008)
- Investments in major oil sands projects for the next 25 years—all of which depend heavily on welding—exceed $200 billion.

Further details can be found in Edmonton Economic Development Corporation’s Value Chain Mapping and Collaboration in the Manufacturing Cluster, which is included in Appendix E: Chair Proposal and Report on Value Chain Mapping.

Going forward, the metal fabrication and machinery manufacturing sectors are starting to encounter stiff global competition as supply chains welcome new global participants. Coupled with this new competition are competitiveness challenges including: ongoing upward cost pressures for Alberta firms relative to their international competition; difficulties achieving scale sufficient to seek larger contracts; existing low innovation and productivity levels; and a skilled labor shortage. This is particularly true as the low-cost international competitors are starting to embrace automation and start to sell products of increasing quality. Low oil prices add to this problem, and several companies have approached the Welding Research Lab for advice on making their facilities more efficient and productive, and on ways to convert their existing setups for diversification of their business plan. This includes areas of advanced manufacturing, welding automation in metal manufacturing, as well as implementing new and optimizing existing processes, consumables, and applications.

4b. Impact of the CCWJ

By tackling the above challenges, the CCWJ will impact manufacturers and operators along the entire supply chain in the energy sector. The development of new technologies will help Alberta companies have an edge in the international market for products and services. Breakthroughs in materials and processes will lead to increased workplace safety and health, products and processes with reduced environmental footprint, and workforce development that can meet Canadian standards while being competitive worldwide. These improvements in technology will involve substantial activity ranging from fundamental research to development and demonstration, requiring a solid partnership among government, university, and industry. From its inception, the Welding Research Lab has been envisaged, set up, and operated with the goal of formalization in mind, and the necessary structure, infrastructure, and collaboration for rapid implementation have already been put in place.
The formal structure of an academic Centre will provide a platform that allows UofA researchers to contribute their welding-related expertise, and leverage new expertise and points of view with the existing network of contacts and funding that otherwise is tied to each specific discipline on an existing structure. The welding-related activities are not limited to engineering, but also include sciences, medical, arts, business, social sciences, and more. Collaborations including sciences, and medicine already exist, and a collaboration with the Faculty of Medicine brought statistical methodologies and expertise not available in engineering. The existence of a center will help expand the scope of research and collaborations by creating a structure to promote welding activities at the UofA beyond specific disciplines. The CCWJ will provide credibility to early-career researchers and help established researchers expanding their focus in an interdisciplinary direction.

The CCWJ will thereby open new funding opportunities and attract new contributions to the endowed chair in Welding and Joining. This will significantly increase the planning window for activities and research programs, and enable sustainable growth. The research at the CCWJ will build the research capacity at the University of Alberta by increasing the number of faculty and students working on new technology for this crucial Alberta industry. The goal is to triple the amount of professors, students, and collaborations from currently 69 to 180 by 2025. The enhanced planning window will also positively impact research support both on the research and the research administration side, which will ensure supervision of students, effective communication with stakeholders, and efficient operations in accordance with Tri-Council and UAPPOL rules.

Development of the type of innovative processes envisaged for the CCWJ will also create new opportunities for manufacturing, technology licensing, and exports. For example, new wear protection overlays that benefit the oil sands industry would not only have valuable applications in other mining applications in Canada and abroad, but also open up new possibilities for transportation (e.g. railroad) and aerospace applications.

These activities will generate new professional development opportunities and disseminate welding knowledge in the complete range from fundamentals to practicing-engineer level, industry support and professional development programs, trade missions, etc.

In conjunction with the opportunities above, the CCWJ will also have an impact on Equity, Diversity, and Inclusion (EDI). The track record of the Welding Research Lab of reaching out to under-represented groups and support of equity and diversity is an important part, and providing a welcoming and encouraging environment, is an important element of the learning experience of its student population and the overall community. Over the past 5 years this has included participation in WISEST (for female High School students), and USchool and TeamUp (for socially vulnerable, Inner City, Aboriginal, and rural youth) on the University level, as well as providing internships to secondary students (incl. Junior High School students) and UG. The leadership of female graduate students in automation, robotics, and welding will provide role models for UG and High School interns. In the summer of 2017 the Welding Research Lab had 50% females, and in the Fall term of 2019, 7 out of 10 UG students in the Welding Research Lab are female (70%).
In addition, the lab has had as many as 18 different nationalities simultaneously. Combined with the success rate of these students to win scholarships these numbers indicate the success of this approach, which allows students to thrive in an open, creative, and stimulating environment.

The Centre will bring significant benefits to the overall level of sophistication in the welding industry by three mechanisms: 1) direct employment of students, post-doctoral fellows, and research associates, 2) research results and engineering tools from the CCWJ will raise the level of technical expertise, awareness, and competitiveness in Alberta, and 3) a new generation of diverse researchers and engineers who are well-rounded, curious, motivated, and able to interact on all technical, social, and cultural levels.

4c. Benefits for the University of Alberta

The University of Alberta has identified research in materials and utilization of natural resources as high priorities. The development of energy research is a high priority for the Faculty of Engineering. The establishment of the CCWJ as a GFC-recognized Centre will support the University of Alberta’s Strategic Plan by advancing existing research strengths in the area of manufacturing and materials for energy applications. The formation of the CCWJ will elevate the level of exposure and visibility of the University of Alberta in these important areas, and leverage on the excellent existing facilities. Welding is one of the most interdisciplinary branches of engineering. The CCWJ will promote further interdisciplinary collaboration by helping to integrate typically unrelated research fields such as heat transfer, fluid mechanics, free surfaces, turbulence, electromagnetism, plasma physics, solid mechanics, elasticity, plasticity, creep, thermodynamics, phase changes, microstructural evolution, electrical circuits, health impact, and more.

The CCWJ will be established as a self-sustaining entity. The endowment funding of $2.1 million from Weldco/Industry Chair for Welding and Joining will support welding research in perpetuity. These funds have served and will continue to serve to attract research and matching funds from agencies such as Western Economic Diversification (WED), Alberta Innovates, and NSERC. The equipment acquired for the CCWJ will bring synergies with many other areas of research and teaching in materials engineering, mechanical, civil, and mining engineering, as well as physics and medicine. The synergies created will make it possible to purchase and maintain unique scientific equipment together with shared access, while ensuring a research intensive focus. This path will ensure a scientific use of equipment without depending on occasional projects for equipment support and maintenance, and channel the unique capabilities and expertise available to a central point of contact for industry and international partner institutions.

The training of HQP will be a major outcome of the proposed Centre; this outcome is well beyond the mandate of industry, and beyond the reach of institutions of training in technologies (colleges). The Welding Research Lab received the American Welding Society’s Image of Welding: Educational Facility Award (2013) for “exemplary commitment to furthering the image of welding.” The CCWJ will build on the University of Alberta’s reputation as a leader in welding education. It will expand opportunities for education of undergraduate and graduate students.
and post-doctoral fellows within an interdisciplinary context, facilitate knowledge exchange, and support skill transfer.

The CCWJ will continue the work of the Welding Research Lab in demonstrating the excitement and promise of a career in technology in Canada, and in attracting new students to the University of Alberta. For example, the Welding Research Lab has hosted 56 visiting students, including students from international exchange programs such as University of Alberta Research Experience / China Scholarship Council (UARE-CSC), MitacsGlobalink, Emerging Leaders in the Americas Program (ELAP), and the French Envoleo grant program. To ensure a stream of incoming students and engineers into the future, the Welding Research Lab participates in the WISEST program and has direct collaborations with Archbishop MacDonald High School, D.S. McKenzie High School, St. Joseph High School, Old Scona Academic High School, and Ottewell Junior High School. Since 2012 these efforts have resulted in 33 internships at the Welding Research Lab for students from local junior high and high schools. This year we have further expanded these activities by participating in the University of Alberta USchool program for socially vulnerable, Aboriginal (First Nations, Métis and Inuit) and rural communities.

The CCWJ will build new connections between the University of Alberta and welding-related industries. Welding technology needs to be developed and adapted to the needs of Canada, in particular when there is no “off-the shelf” solution. As a central point of contact for welding-related questions, the CCWJ will add very significant value to industry in Canada, especially companies in Western Canada and Alberta.

The CCWJ will make possible new pan-Alberta collaborations, leveraging the close ties of the Welding Research Lab with relevant Alberta institutions such as InnoTech Alberta and the Industrial Development branch of the Government of Alberta. These two organizations are partners in the Alberta Metal Fabrication Innovation (AMFI) program. AMFI’s mission is to bridge the gap between productivity technologies and their industrial application in Alberta through improved coordination between businesses, technical and networking services, and improved facilitation of knowledge and skill transfer between academia, industry, and government. Beneficiaries of AMFI activities included the Alberta manufacturing companies supplying product to oil sands activities. Through AMFI, the Welding Research Lab has partnered with most other major local manufacturing associations and institutions in Alberta, including Northern Alberta Institute of Technology (NAIT), Southern Alberta Institute of Technology (SAIT), Red Deer College (RDC), as well as Peace River Manufacturers Association (PeRMA) and Central Alberta Rural manufacturers (CARMA). Some of these institutions have expressed an interest in establishing a formal collaboration, for which the recognition as a centre is paramount. Initial steps have been taken with both NAIT and SAIT, and mechanisms are in place to increase this collaboration once a formal structure has been established. By leveraging such collaborations, the CCWJ will bring awareness and raise the profile of the UofA on the federal level. As a Centre, it will be possible to include the area of policy-making, and take an active role through participation in consultations, partnerships with the federal and provincial governments and professional societies (Canadian and international).
The CCWJ will increase the stature of the University of Alberta in the national and international research community, and in key industry sectors. Members of the Welding Research Lab are members of key committees such as IIW: National Delegate for Canada; Expert for C XII and SG 212; Member of IIW TMB; and AWS: A5G Subcommittee on Hard Facing Filler Metals, EC Education Committee, Higher Education – Engineering Subcommittee. They are also involved in the executive committees of the CWB Association (Edmonton chapter), and the American Welding Society (Alberta Chapter, and the Board of Directors).

4d. Benefits for Students
Students will benefit from the CCWJ in numerous ways:

- **Job prospects / Industry Placement**: The welding research lab has a track record of a 100% success rate in industry placement of its graduates, which often includes high-ranking positions at the point of graduation.

- **Scholarships**: The CCWJ will be the role model for student engagement in industry association student chapters, and further increase the high success rate of scholarships for its students.

- **Relevant Practical Experience through Industry Internships**: The students will be given the opportunity to participate in industry internships. In the past this has included a 4-month internship at Tesla, which was so successful that Tesla sent a recruiting team to the UofA, and hired another student from the welding research lab for another 4-month internship (ongoing).

- **Industry Networking**: The CCWJ will provide regular networking opportunities with high-ranking industry professionals at the centre, at industry events, and at conferences.

- **Development of Student Leadership**: The current student chapters of leading welding industry associations are considered the most innovative and active in North America, which reflects in attendance of international conferences funded through student fundraising, and nomination of students to leadership functions (in 2019 Mitchell Grams was selected to be a part of the Board of Directors at AWS as one of two inaugural AWS Young Leaders; other students are part of the IIW Young Leaders, and alumni continue to play a leading role on the national level of the CWB Welding Association).

- **Interdisciplinary Research Environment**: Welding research is inherently multidisciplinary, and the interdisciplinary environment established by the CCWJ will support student learning and growth by facilitating access to a broad range of expertise and foster knowledge exchange. This environment will be supported by the unique equipment available, plus specialized instruments available through our collaborators, and access to the broad range of scientific equipment available within the broader UofA ecosystem.

- **Inclusive and Welcoming Environment**: The collaborative environment at the CCWJ will encourage students who may not have considered a career in manufacturing, and by ensuring that these students will find job opportunities in the industry will contribute to making the industry a more inclusive place.
See Appendix D: Student Success – Scholarships and Industry Placement for an overview of scholarships and industry placement of graduates.

5. Governance Structure

The CCWJ will be operated by the University of Alberta, under the Dean of Engineering (currently Dean Dr. F. Forbes). The Dean of Engineering is ultimately responsible for the operations of the Centre as an entity within the Faculty of Engineering. The CCWJ Director, guided by an Industrial Advisory Board and a Scientific Advisory Board, recommends actions; the Dean is responsible for executing decisions that affect the operation of the Centre. In addition to hiring, the Dean is responsible for the accounts related to the Centre. Control of all Centre accounts is through the Dean’s Office.

The nature of this governance model is described further in the section below, but an important factor is the hierarchy of control embodied in the structure, agreements, and charters related to this. Upper level control of the Centre rests with the University.

The administrative structure of the CCWJ (see Figure 1) is designed to support its research and education mandate and to foster the collaboration with the sponsors of the Weldco/Industry Chair in Welding and Joining, industry partners, and government agencies. In order for the CCWJ to succeed in its goals, it requires the ongoing commitment and collaboration of the University of Alberta and key stakeholders (including contributors to the Weldco/Industry Chair in Welding and Joining, and major contributors such as Lincoln Electric, Miller Electric, and the CWB/ CWB Welding Foundation) as well as a management structure that fosters strong communication and the formation of consensus decisions. The CCWJ will employ a management structure derived from other existing centres in Engineering.

![Diagram: Proposed Structure for Centre. The dashed lines indicate advisory roles, not hierarchical roles](image-url)
The hierarchy established ensures that the control of the Centre is clearly resting with the UofA.

Director:  
The Director will lead the CCWJ activities and coordinate activities with the academic partners and program management. He or she will direct the development of new research projects, and promote the Centre to the University community and provincial, national, and international audiences. The Director will maintain a network of international research contacts with direct benefits to the Centre, the UofA and the industry. All annual operating plans, budgets, and reports will be reviewed and approved by the Director before submission to the UofA, sponsors, or industrial partners.

The Director of the CCWJ is the Weldco/Industry Chair in Welding and Joining, and will be selected by the Dean. The Director shall not receive any salary from the Centre, and shall be a full-time academic staff member of the University of Alberta.

Industrial Advisory Board:  
The Industrial Advisory Board (IAB) is expected to meet annually and will provide valuable advice on strategic direction, steward progress, provide feedback on budget, research plans, and intellectual property proposals before submission to the Dean of Engineering and/or the UofA. Although it is expected that the UofA and the CCWJ Director will consider the advice and guidance of the IAB, no term or condition compels the UofA to accept such advice or guidance.

The IAB will be chaired by a representative from industry elected by IAB members. IAB membership consists of:

- One representative of each company that contributes more than $50K to the Weldco/Industry Chair
- Representatives of each company contributing to large multi-year funding structures will be part of the IAB for the duration of the project. Of these members, only representatives of companies that contribute more than $50k annually will have a vote
- Member from the Industry Development Branch of the Government of Alberta (currently Mr. D. Unrau)
- Chair of the Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering (currently Prof. K. Cadien).
- One graduate (within the last 5 years) on a renewable 2-year appointment, who is elected by the IAB members

Participation in the IAB shall be voluntary and not remunerated.

Scientific Advisory Board:  
The CCWJ’s research mandate is guided by an interdisciplinary Scientific Advisory Board (SAB) that works collaboratively with the Director and has the goal of strengthening the interdisciplinary interaction with collaborators. The SAB is expected to meet annually and will provide scientific advice, steward progress, provide feedback on research plans, research
budgets, and intellectual property proposals before submission to the Dean of Engineering and/or the UofA. Although it is expected that the UofA and the CCWJ Director will consider the advice and guidance of the SAB, no term or condition compels the UofA to accept such advice or guidance.

The SAB works with researchers to align proposals with existing work and strategic direction and areas. The SAB is chaired by the Weldco/Industry Chair. Membership consists of: the Dean of Engineering, CCWJ Director, Chair of the Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering, and two members elected from the pool of internal academic collaborators on a two-year, renewable term. Consideration of EDI will be part of the nomination and selection process. Participation in the SAB shall be voluntary and not remunerated.

Associate Director

The Associate Director (currently Dr. G. Dapp) will manage the laboratories of the CCWJ (currently four), and collaborate on research design, technology implementation, methodology determination, analysis and other activities that facilitate the work of the CCWJ. Duties include all phases of data collection and analysis and the preparation of proposals for new research activities, the presentation of research findings, and the preparation of reports and papers. The Associate Director will make recommendations to the Director regarding long, medium, and short-term research activities, structure of the Centre, and hiring decisions. The Associate Director will consult regularly with the Faculty of Engineering Finance/Human Resource Management team at the University of Alberta, as well as Research Services Office, and other university entities to ensure efficient and compliant management of research grants. The Associate Director will supervise support staff, interact with sponsors and industry, and help promote the Centre to the University community and provincial, national, and international audiences. The Associate Director will supervise procurement and accounting, and report to the Director that all accounts are in order.

The Associate Director will be expected to work independently, overseeing the implementation of decisions made in consultation with the Director, and making some final decisions regarding research projects and their resources. The Associate Director is a full-time trust-funded employee of the University of Alberta and subject to the hiring and employment policies of the University. The recruitment, performance evaluation, and terms of employment will follow the University of Alberta standards for positions of this type.

External Stakeholders

The external stakeholders involve the people and entities outside UofA who will benefit from the knowledge and opportunities generated by the CCWJ. External stakeholders include academic partners, industry, and government, some of whom may be part of the IAB and SAB. These stakeholders may be involved as sponsors or collaborators in ongoing research project, and through their involvement will engage new sponsors and collaborators. These stakeholders do not constitute a formal entity, but are engaged based on the needs of industry, ongoing initiatives of associations, priorities set by the provincial and federal governments, and consideration of
EDI. This involves participation in round-table events, tours, trade missions, etc. and will feed into identifying research priorities, project selection, and outreach activities.

Government partners will connect the CCWJ to federal and provincial funding opportunities and serve as collaborators on policy/advocacy related projects in addition to engaging new industry sponsors and collaborators.

Academic Partners will ensure the operation and growth of the CCWJ in the areas of their expertise, and the supervision and training of Research Associates, PDFs, and students. The Academic Partners promote the Centre to the University community and provincial, national, and international audiences. The Academic Partners will be expected to be involved in technical societies, committees, and editorial boards, engage new sponsors and collaborators, and attract new undergraduate and graduate students to the Centre. Academic Partners shall not receive any salary from the Centre, and shall be full-time academic staff members of the University of Alberta, Adjunct Professors, or collaborators from partner universities.

Support Staff
Support staff will take care of daily accounting, billing, and ordering, manage communications related to industry events or trade missions, maintain contact lists and databases on Centre-related statistics, compile a newsletter, maintain the CCWJ website, make travel arrangements for the Director and faculty, and handle paperwork. These staff (currently T. Runyon and M. Doyle) are trust employees and subject to the hiring and employment policies of the University. Recruitment, performance evaluation, and terms of employment will follow the University of Alberta standards for positions of this type.

6. Role and Qualifications of the Centre Lead

The Director of the CCWJ will be the Weldco/Industry Chair in Welding and Joining. The Director will lead all CCWJ activities and coordinate activities with faculty members and program management. He or she will direct the development of new research projects. The Director will promote the Centre to the University community and provincial, national, and international audiences. He or she will engage new sponsors and collaborators, and lead the recruitment of undergraduate and graduate students. The Director will be expected to be involved in technical societies, committees, and editorial boards on an international level. The director will maintain a network of international research contacts with direct benefits to the Centre, the UofA and the industry.

The founding Director of the CCWJ will be Professor Patricio F. Mendez, inaugural holder of the Weldco/Industry Chair in Welding and Joining. Professor Mendez’s teaching and research focus on physics and mathematics of welding and materials processing, including heat transfer, magnetohydrodynamics, arc plasma, thermodynamics, and kinetics. Applications include wear protection for mining, and oil extraction, alloy development, procedure development, new welding processes such as laser cladding, casting, solidification, and direct metal additive manufacturing using semi-solid processing. Before joining the University of Alberta in January 2009, he taught and researched at the Colorado School of Mines. Before that, he was a consulting
engineer at Exponent Inc. In 1995 Dr. Mendez co-founded Semi-Solid Technologies Inc. in Cambridge, MA. Prof. Mendez holds a Ph.D. and a M.S. degree in Materials Engineering MIT, and a Mechanical Engineer degree from the University of Buenos Aires. He is a Fellow of the AWS and the CWA. Selected awards include, UofA Outstanding Mentorship in Undergraduate Research, AWS William Irrgang Award, IIW Kenneth Easterling Award, the ASM Brian Ives Award, the NSF CAREER Award, the MIT Rocca Fellowship, and UBA Research Fellowship, and has 9 patents.

7. Employees

The Welding Research Lab currently funds three employees:

- Full-time Associate Director (currently Dr. G. Dapp), who manages the operating budget of the lab, supports research and outreach activities, and assists the Director in interacting with industry, sponsors, and government contacts
- Part-time secretaries (currently T. Runyon and M. Doyle), who help with event coordination, ordering, and accounting

These staff are University of Alberta employees and are entirely trust funded through the CCWJ. The CCWJ budget will include adequate provisions for benefit costs, salary settlements, and other escalating factors. The same funding and budgetary provisions will apply should additional support staff positions be created in the future.

8. Financial Plan

The CCWJ will be self-sustaining through the endowment of the Weldco/Industry Chair in Welding and Joining, research funds, direct government support for operations, and a limited amount of service provided to industry.

The Weldco/Industry Chair in Welding and Joining is an endowment of funds contributed through 2019 by the nine companies listed in the left column of Table 2. This $2.1 million endowment ($1.7M contributions, $4k accrued earnings) will support long-term research programs in welding, and endowment earnings will be leveraged as cash contributions in NSERC alliance grants. In addition to the endowment, we have received a $1,500,000 equipment grant from Western Economic Diversification (of which $725,000 was shared with AITF [now InnoTech Alberta]), a $1.1 million grant from Western Economic Diversification (100% held at the Welding Research Lab, with an additional in-kind contribution of $1m from Group Six Technologies, KUKA Canada, Octopuz, and others), and a $355,000 grant from the Government of Alberta for the development of the research aspects of the program. The Welding Research Lab has also received a $500,000 grant from the Canada Foundation for Innovation (CFI) through which we added a robotic laser cladding and welding automation research facility. These funds are in addition to the NSERC and industrial funds currently held by Prof. Mendez and other academic partners, which have consistently provided an operating budget to support growth of the Welding Research Lab.
During the initial five-year period of the CCWJ, we plan to seek matching funds from a range of agencies, such as the NSERC Alliance program and federal and provincial initiatives. The funding for the Centre will come from multiple industry partners, and include further leveraging of the Weldco/Industry Endowment spending allocation of currently $68k/year.

Annual expenditures will be set by the funds available from available sources in a given year, and therefore the establishment of the Centre does not pose a financial risk to the University of Alberta. The annual budget is estimated to consist of:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>2019-20</th>
<th>2020-21</th>
<th>2021-22</th>
<th>2022-23</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Students &amp; PDF</td>
<td>200,000</td>
<td>330,000</td>
<td>355,000</td>
<td>400,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Research Associate</td>
<td>90,000</td>
<td>94,000</td>
<td>98,000</td>
<td>102,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support Staff</td>
<td>40,000</td>
<td>50,000</td>
<td>50,000</td>
<td>50,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lab supplies</td>
<td>20,000</td>
<td>25,000</td>
<td>25,000</td>
<td>30,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Travel</td>
<td>30,000</td>
<td>30,000</td>
<td>32,000</td>
<td>35,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equipment maintenance</td>
<td>5,000</td>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>15,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software maintenance</td>
<td>2,000</td>
<td>5,000</td>
<td>5,000</td>
<td>8,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
As the research program grows, we plan to expand our collaborations to include researchers from other universities. Collaborations are already in place with UNAM (Mexico) and Colorado School of Mines. On a project-specific basis, we also plan to seek collaborations with InnoTech Alberta, CANMET, Natural Resources Canada, and the R&D centres of manufacturing companies in Alberta, Canada, and abroad. The University of Alberta already enjoys extensive collaboration with government organizations and welding-related companies, and we will seek collaboration on CCWJ projects to bring the best minds and facilities to the research program, and to avoid duplication of effort and resources.

8a. Budget Uncertainties and Mitigation

The largest uncertainty regarding the budget stems is the consistent availability of research funding and changes in the Tri-Agency funding structures. Mitigation of these uncertainties include a proactive participation in funding workshops; active outreach and networking activities to industry, industry associations, and government; and close collaboration with University administration and Research Service Office. The endowment earnings (currently approx. $68,000/year) will be leveraged in grant proposals (with expected 200% matching through NSERC) and further reduce uncertainties, and guarantee continuity of the structure of the CCWJ. The 10-year experience of the highly successful Welding Research Lab (see Figure 2 below) and similar track record for the partners provide a baseline for operation, and have already seen the transition from a funding structure with a strong influence of oil and gas funding to a more diversified and broader industrial basis including advanced manufacturing and industry currently not yet operating in Alberta. In addition, since annual expenditures will be set by the funds available from available sources in a given year, the establishment of the Centre does not pose a financial risk to the University of Alberta.

**Figure 2: 10-year Revenue Distribution of the Welding Research Lab 2009-2019. Total Revenue $4.25 Million (excluding equipment donations and in-kind contributions)**
9. Space Requirements and Equipment

9a. Space Requirements

The CCWJ will be hosted in the existing 275 m² Welding Research Lab in CME L1-108, which opened in the Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering on May 5, 2010. The Welding Research Lab also operates a dedicated advanced metallurgical testing laboratory in CME 5-133 (45 m²). A laser cladding research facility for advanced wear and corrosion protection materials and additive manufacturing (45 m²) was funded by a $500k grant from the Canada Foundation for Innovation (CFI) John R. Evans Leaders Fund (JELF) and the Alberta Innovation and Advanced Education (IAE), with further support from Western Economic Diversification (WED). It is located in room CME L1-118, with storage space in L1-120.

The spaces were assigned by the Faculty of Engineering as part of the Weldco/Industry Chair, the CFI grant, and the WED grants. There will be no charges for space or equipment usage, and no further space requirements are expected in the short to medium term.

9b. Equipment

The equipment infrastructure of the proposed Centre is currently fully functional as the Welding Research Lab, which hosts state-of-the-art equipment through the donations of welding-related companies and government grants. The equipment includes latest generation, microprocessor-controlled GMAW, GTAW, SAW, PTAW machines, various spot-welding machines, plasma-cutting equipment, two hot-wire GMAW/GTAW units, an ARC Mate 100iC series welding robot and sophisticated equipment for solid-state joining processes like friction stir welding. Pipe welding equipment includes a pipe rotator, various pipe stands, and a Firefly orbital welding system. Further testing equipment consists in several data acquisition systems, various oscilloscopes/analyzer/waveform generators, and the Welding Research Lab’s Phantom V210 and Miro eX4 high-speed video cameras, as well as a FLIR A6752sc thermal camera with cooled InSb detector. Software available exclusively to the Welding Research Lab includes a multi-seat license of simulation software Simufact.Welding and Simufact.Forming by MSC Software plus their APEX meshing system, VrWeld welding simulation software, a multi-seat license for JMatPro simulation for calculating properties for multi-component alloys, and custom-made image analysis scripts that are optimized for oil and gas applications. Software that is available through the Faculty of Engineering includes ThermoCalc and COMSOL.

This facility has dedicated transformers and utilities for welding research including a 500 kVA transformer for 600V and a 150kVA for 480V, a 1 ton overhead crane, and an array of dedicated fume extraction, centralized welding gas with computer-controlled, high-precision mass flow controllers, compressed air, and internet lines to allow data logging from each welding power supply online. This facility also features its own dedicated metallography laboratory to evaluate and characterize joints, housing a Nikon SMZ 745T Stereomicroscope, a Nikon Eclipse MA200 Inverted Microscope, a Buehler AutoMet/EcoMet 300 Autopolisher, a Buehler SimpliMet 1000 Hot Mount, Presi Mecatome T180 Microcutter, and a Twin-Jet Electropolisher Fischione Model 110.
The Welding Research Lab also operates a dedicated advanced metallurgical testing laboratory, which contains an Instron CEAST 9350 cryogenic instrumented impact testing with high-energy module capable of testing full-size Charpy samples, a Wilson Rockwell 2000-series hardness tester, a Tukon 2500 Automated Vickers Hardness Tester, a Rita L78 High Speed Dilatometer, and houses the Bruker G8 Galileo Oxygen / Nitrogen / Hydrogen Gas chromatographer. We will add a surface profilometer by late fall of 2019.

The laser cladding research facility provides the CCWJ with a state-of-the-art KUKA KR-16 6-axis robot, a KRC-4 controller, and a 2-axis positioner, together with a 9 kW Laserline LDF 9000-40 laser system with built-in two-colour pyrometer. This is complemented by a Creaform Metrascan 750 3D scanning system, Primes BM+ and FM+ laser beam profilers, and a laser power meter. Software available includes a multi-seat version of Octopuz and RoboDK, as well as a single license of Geomagic. The medium-term plan for the robot is to expand the facility with multi-process and machine vision and machine learning capabilities and become a cornerstone of research in welding automation and additive manufacturing.

Cost for equipment purchases, maintenance, and upgrades have been handled by the Welding Research Lab through grants, and will be shared by the members of the CCWJ based on project-specific usage.

10. Potential Risks to the University of Alberta

The main uncertainty associated with the CCWJ is the future budget. Annual expenditures will be set by the funds available from available sources in a given year, and actual expenditures will depend on the success of the Centre in gaining contributions from research partners. If the research income were insufficient, then the activities of the CCWJ would be reduced to the point where they could be sustained on the income from the endowment and matching funding available at that time. The terms for termination of the partnership between Weldco/Industry Chair partners and the University are covered under each endowment agreement (for a sample see Appendix F: Weldco/Industry Endowment Agreement).

11. Annual Reporting and Strategic Review

The CCWJ will provide an annual report to the Dean of Engineering. The Dean will annually report on the progress of the Centre to the Provost as required by University of Alberta policy. Further, in consultation with key stakeholders, the Dean will conduct a major operational and strategic review of the CCWJ and its activities within three years of its establishment.

12. Intellectual Property (IP) and Copyright

All IP and copyright will be handled in accordance to the University of Alberta IP and copyright regulations. Beyond existing collaborations and agreements, each new sponsor and industrial partner will sign an agreement that covers the specific details of their involvement in the CCWJ.

The CCWJ is funded through several different streams of funds, each of which has its own terms of termination.

The terms for termination of the partnership between each Weldco/Industry Chair partner and the University are covered under individual endowment agreements (sample agreement attached in Appendix F: Weldco/Industry Endowment Agreement). The terms for termination of the partnership between IRC partners and the University will be covered under each agreement. The terms for termination for NSERC CRD sponsors or individual research projects or grants are covered under each individual agreement.

According to these agreements, should a Sponsor’s involvement in the CCWJ be terminated in accordance to the specific agreement, the parties will take all reasonable steps to wind down the involvement of the terminating Sponsor in the Research Program with a minimum of costs. In these circumstances, the terminating Sponsor will pay for the portion of the Research Program completed and the University’s committed and uncancellable costs of the Research Program, the total of which in no event will exceed the terminating Sponsor’s Contribution pursuant to the agreement. The Sponsors will pay for the portion of the Research Program completed and the University’s committed and uncancellable costs of the Research Program, the total of which in no event will exceed the Contribution pursuant to the agreement.

The remaining budget will determine the scale of operation of the CCWJ, which would be reduced to the point where the Centre could be sustained on the income from the endowment and matching funding available at that time.

14. Letters of Support

[Attached]

15. Agreements and Memoranda of Understanding between the University of Alberta and its Partners

As an academic entity, the Welding Research Lab maintains active collaborations that are formally recognized through Memoranda of Understanding, including an MOU for German-Alberta exchange on welding technologies, signed in Berlin on June 4, 2013, and a MOU for Hiroshima University and University of Alberta exchange on welding technologies, which was last renewed in 2019. Further MOUs are in preparation with the TU Graz and the TU Munich.

These MOUs provide a formalized foundation for the collaborative aspects of the Welding Research Lab but do not affect establishment, funding, or operation of the proposed CCWJ.
Dr. Steven Dew  
Provost and Vice-President (Academic)  
University of Alberta  
2-40 South Academic Building (SAB)  
University of Alberta  
Edmonton, AB  T6G 2G7  

Re: Letter of Support for the Canadian Centre of Welding and Joining (CCWJ),  
University of Alberta  

Dear Dr. Dew,

As a researcher who has collaborated with the Welding Research Lab on fundamental research for several years, I feel privileged to provide this letter of support for the ambitious project of establishing the Canadian Centre of Welding and Joining (CCWJ) at the University of Alberta. I see a very concrete need to establish this centre not only for this university and province, but also in this time of economic pressure, as its role in connecting fundamental and applied research. The ability to address issues from a very deep level up, e.g. studying arc physics and optimizing processes and machines, or using practical problems from the industry to learn more about fundamental principles involved, is exciting for industry and research and will have an incredible impact on the medium to long term prospect of companies. The interdisciplinary aspects of these undertakings also cannot be overstated – as a plasma physicist the microcosm of welding offers new insights into cosmic phenomena, and vice versa.

As part of my collaboration with Prof. Patricio Mendez we have been working closely on arc physics, looking into measuring and analyzing the plasma composition and distribution in the welding arc. Even though this research is very fundamental in nature, welding opens up opportunities to generate and experiment with plasmas that are allow fundamental work while also having direct practical application in the industry. We are currently co-advising 1 graduate student, and have co-advised 4 undergraduate students in this area since 2014.

It is my strong conviction that having the CCWJ at the University of Alberta will have a positive effect not just on our collaboration, but encourage further interdisciplinary collaborations around the inherently interdisciplinary field of welding.

Sincerely,

Richard D. Sydora  
Professor of Physics,  
Director, Theoretical Physics Institute
Dr. Steven Dew  
Provost and Vice-President (Academic)  
University of Alberta  
2-40 South Academic Building (SAB)  
University of Alberta  
Edmonton, AB, T6G 2G7  
Canada

Re:  Letter of Support for the Canadian Centre of Welding and Joining (CCWJ), University of Alberta

Dear Dr. Dew:

I am sending you this letter to express my unequivocal support for establishing the Canadian Centre of Welding and Joining (CCWJ) at the University of Alberta.

Since 2013, Prof. Patricio Mendez and I have an active and productive interdisciplinary collaboration that combines my research in Occupational Health with the expertise available at the Welding Research lab. Of particular interest to our collaboration are the health effects nanoparticles and ultrafine particles emitted in the welding process, which have become a large issue to the welding industry with the introduction of new Occupational Exposure Limits. We have worked on a comprehensive overview of emissions of environmental strains produced by each welding process, as a part of which Prof. Mendez and I have co-supervised a post-doctoral fellow. The range of equipment and the expertise available in the Welding Research lab has been a tremendous resource and help. A co-authored article on “Fume particles and noise levels produced by common welding processes” was just accepted for publication. We are presently working in collaboration with Dr. Hashisho, from Environmental Engineering, and his MSc student to measure emission factors of common welding processes, for which we have been using Prof. Mendez’s facilities to generate representative data.

I strongly commend Prof. Mendez for the efforts in and openness to working interdisciplinary. The spectrum and quality of research carried out at the welding research lab is extremely impressive, covers both applied and fundamental areas, fosters interdisciplinary collaboration, and truly exemplifies the qualities for a GFC-recognized Centre.

I see an immense benefit to the whole research community that will result from establishing the CCWJ at the University of Alberta and support the establishment of the CCWJ as a GFC-recognized Centre at the University of Alberta in the strongest possible terms.

Sincerely,

Bernadette Quémerais  
Associate Professor, Division of Preventive Medicine  
University of Alberta
Re: Letter of Support for the Canadian Centre of Welding and Joining (CCWJ), University of Alberta

Dear Dr. Dew:

With this letter I would like to express my explicit support for the establishment of the Canadian Centre for Welding and Joining (CCWJ) as a GFC-recognized academic centre at the University of Alberta. Based on my experience in collaborating with the Welding Research Lab on an interdisciplinary level, I strongly believe that the recognition as a Centre will prove to be beneficial for the greater research environment at the UofA, the province, and for Canada.

I am currently conducting a CIHR funded study of the impact of occupational conditions on female welders and the unborn child. As part of this research we are validating, in collaboration with Professor Mendez, a job exposure matrix to test assumptions about the influence of welding fume on pregnancy outcome. As part of this collaboration we successfully co-advised a welding apprentice who participated in welding-related research carried out in both our laboratories. The latest round of experiments took place throughout this past summer, and we were able to generate data not available in any publication or database. This data is currently being analyzed, and once published, will provide a significant contribution to the research community. I am looking forward to more of these interdisciplinary projects. The welding research lab with its fundamental knowledge of welding, access to welding equipment, and its specialized characterization equipment is a tremendous resource for occupational health related research. In bringing together equipment makers, manufacturing industry, and interdisciplinary research, it is ideally placed to carry out the research and start making the changes that will have an enormous positive impact a whole industry and, more importantly, the people working in it.

Especially in light of the importance of welding as a manufacturing technology, and the increased awareness of health impact on welders, I have no doubt that the CCWJ will play a central role for
research not only in engineering, but also in bridging gaps between disciplines, connecting industry and research, and training students in various disciplines in this area.

The openness of the laboratory to interdisciplinary endeavours and the collaborative spirit of the team make it a strong candidate for recognition as an official research centre at the UofA, and I am looking forward to further collaboration and to the benefits the CCWJ will bring to our students, colleagues, and the welders and companies in the manufacturing industry.

Sincerely,

Nicola Cherry MD PhD
Tripartite Chair of Occupational Health,
Professor, Division of Preventive Medicine,
University of Alberta
Dr. Steven Dew  
Provost and Vice-President (Academic)  
University of Alberta  
2-40 South Academic Building (SAB)  
University of Alberta  
Edmonton, AB T6G 2G7  
Canada  

Re: Letter of Support for the Canadian Centre of Welding and Joining (CCWJ), University of Alberta  

Dear Dr. Dew:

I am very happy to provide this letter of support for establishing the Canadian Centre of Welding and Joining (CCWJ) at the University of Alberta. The welding research facilities in the Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering not only provide an incredible resource for researchers but based on my interactions with the industry also address a concrete need for the manufacturing industry in Alberta.

My Laboratory of Intelligent Manufacturing, Design and Automation (LIMDA) in the Department of Mechanical Engineering has a focus on Advanced Manufacturing, Industry 4.0 and Robotics, and we have a highly successful ongoing collaboration with the welding research lab and share an NSERC CRD grant on the use of laser cladding for repair welds technology. This project came together because of the network of industrial contacts of Prof. Mendez. As an early career researcher I am very excited about the equipment and expertise of the welding research lab, and the willingness of Prof. Mendez to make available his laboratory and industrial contacts to collaboration and furthering research.

Prof. Mendez and I are currently working on our first invited peer-reviewed publication, and have identified several topics for further collaboration and shared research proposals in the areas of advanced/additive manufacturing, welding automation, 3D vision and controls, and process development. This includes further automation of multi-pass welding and robot-assisted welding in confined spaces. The excellent connections of the welding research lab to the international research community and to the industry will be of great benefit not only for my ongoing and future work, but also to other researchers working at the University of Alberta, and I have no doubt that we all stand to benefit from establishing the Canadian Centre for Welding and Joining.

I wholeheartedly support the establishment of the CCWJ as a GFC-recognized Centre at the University of Alberta and look forward to working with this unique entity.

Sincerely,

Rafiq Ahmad  
Assistant Professor,  
Laboratory of Intelligent Manufacturing, Design and Automation (LIMDA),  
5-287, DICE, Mechanical Engineering Department
Dr. Steven Dew  
Provost and Vice-President (Academic)  
University of Alberta  
2-40 South Academic Building (SAB)  
University of Alberta  
Edmonton, AB T6G 2G7  
Canada

Re: Letter of Support for the Canadian Centre of Welding and Joining (CCWJ), University of Alberta

Dear Dr. Dew:

I would like to express my support for establishing the Canadian Centre of Welding and Joining (CCWJ) at the University of Alberta. Since its opening in 2010, the welding research laboratory directed by Prof. Mendez has been an important part of the Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering, seen continuous and steady growth, and has been very popular destination in our outreach activities, including EnggExpos and UofA Open Houses. The fact that the opening of this facility goes back to an industry funded chair, the strong ongoing connection to and interaction with the industry, and the active collaborations with colleagues at the UofA and elsewhere indicates that this facility is a much needed entity for the province and the country.

In my function as the Graduate Chair for the Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering, I have been impressed by the high quality of research and of students that the lab Prof. Mendez’s group has been able to attract and retain, including not only top students from the UofA but also top students from Tsinghua University, from the Paton Welding Institute, and the elite institution of the Nuclear Energy Commission of Argentina (Instituto Sabato). In addition, on an undergraduate level, the welding research group has been a very active participant in the Dean’s Research Awards program, and has played an active role in the academic experience of many of our students. Overall, the welding research lab has been a fantastic ambassador for graduate studies at the UofA, and has contributed immensely the learning experience students – which reflects in the high success rate of students in obtaining scholarships and obtaining high-level positions upon graduation.

On the research side, I have collaborated with Prof. Patricio Mendez since 2012 in the area of predictive process control in gas-metal arc welding. As a part of this collaboration we have co-advised one undergraduate summer student, one undergraduate co-op student, and published a paper on the findings in IFAC Advanced Control of Chemical Processes (ADCHEM).

I have absolutely no doubt that the recognition as an Academic Centre will help to further enhance and expand the activities, attract new students, encourage new collaborations, and provide an important foundation for growth into the future. I strongly believe that the Centre will help build the reputation of the University of Alberta as a research university, and be a place of invaluable support to Alberta’s manufacturing industry.
Sincerely,

Vinay Prasad  
Jaffer Professor in Process Systems and Control Engineering  
Associate Chair, Graduate Studies
Re: Letter of Support for the Canadian Centre of Welding and Joining (CCWJ), University of Alberta

Dear Dr. Dew:

It is with great pleasure that I write this letter of support for establishing the Canadian Centre of Welding and Joining (CCWJ) at the University of Alberta.

I have collaborated with Prof. Patricio Mendez since 2014 in the area of wear-resistant overlays in mining. As a part of this collaboration we co-advised one MSc student, with another MSc student carrying out parts of his research in the excellent facilities of the welding research lab. We have also published a paper on “Issues associated with welding and surfacing of large mobile mining equipment for use in oil sands applications” in Science and Technology of Welding and Joining in 2015, and a paper on “Welding and Surfacing of Large Mobile Mining Equipment” in the CWA Journal in 2016. With the advent of new complex alloys for hard-facing in the mining industry that can address very specific environments and make application-based usage economically feasible, I expect this involvement to grow. The expertise, facilities, and contacts to international researchers and industry that is available at Prof. Mendez lab is an invaluable asset to my research, to this university, and to the province.

In a resource-based economy, such as dominates our province, it is extremely important to stay up-to-date with new developments on a research level. It is also important to further the understanding through collaborations in various disciplines, in order to bring together perspectives, ideas and individual expertise. But what is equally important is to find ways to synthesize and disseminate the knowledge not just to academia, but to industry. The welding research lab has been extremely successful in this regard thus far, and is also a unique resource available to industry to maintain and foster competitive advantage in a global market.

Without any reservation I commend the efforts by Dr. Mendez and his team to establish the Canadian Centre of Welding and Joining at the University of Alberta; and see this as a logical progression for the excellent work that is being done right now, developing practical industrial change for the future, making Alberta a global focus.

Sincerely,

Dr. Tim Joseph, P.Eng., FCIM
Associate Dean & Director, Alberta Equipment – Ground Interactions Syndicate (AEGIS)
Dr. Steven Dew  
Provost and Vice-President (Academic)  
University of Alberta  
2-40 South Academic Building (SAB)  
University of Alberta  
Edmonton, AB T6G 2G7  

October 3, 2019  

RE: Letter of Support for the Canadian Centre of Welding and Joining (CCWJ), University of Alberta  

Dear Dr. Dew:  

I am writing to you to support the initiative to establish the Canadian Centre of Welding and Joining (CCWJ) at the University of Alberta.  

Prof. Patricio Mendez and I have been working in the area of robotics control for several years, and are collaborators on the WED-funded project “Automated Repair of Low Volume/High Mix Components in the Alberta Context.” My interest in this project is robust control, which is a branch of control theory that takes explicit account of the fact that the mathematical models used in control design are never perfect. This is a very practical problem, as a result of which practical implementations of theoretical models and simulations often fail in industrial contexts. My research background addresses such issues by implementing non-linear control theory, with emphasis on stability theory and robust and optimal control, for example through multirate sampled-data control.  

Welding constitutes a complex non-linear system, and when it needs to be controlled and integrated with robotics, the complexity increases even more. The robustness of the system directly impacts the ability of industrial implementation, and we are excited to make a concerted effort in achieving this through an interdisciplinary collaboration to develop the proposed technology. This also indicates why such an automation is still lacking in the industry that does not have the range of resources available to make this possible.  

The same argument also applies to the larger endeavor of establishing the CCWJ, which brings together a wide area of expertise and makes it possible to tackle projects of high industrial relevance. This is much-needed, and will create a unique resource for anything related to welding far beyond Western Canada.  

I am very excited about this initiative, and look forward to working with colleagues and industrial partners on many projects in the area of welding.  

Sincerely,  

Horacio J. Marquez,  
University of Alberta
September 24, 2019

Dr. Steven Dew  
Provost and Vice-President (Academic)  
University of Alberta  
2-40 South Academic Building (SAB)  
Edmonton, AB T6G 2G7

Dear Dr. Dew:

I am pleased to write this letter of support for establishing the Canadian Centre of Welding and Joining (CCWJ) at the University of Alberta. This is a much needed entity for the province and the country, and it is an ambitious and very promising endeavor for our university. The establishment of the CCWJ as a GFC-recognized Centre will be an important step for welding-interested parties at the UofA in maintaining and increasing the scientific and creative momentum in all aspects of advanced research and teaching related to the joining of metals, from engineering, to physics, to medicine.

I have collaborated with the director of the Welding Research Lab, Prof. Patricio Mendez, the Weldco/Industry Chair in Welding and Joining, since I joined the University of Alberta in 2013. We have worked closely on welding metallurgy, co-created 3 courses (MAT E 466/630 Special Topics in Material Engineering: Fundamentals of Welding, MAT E 466/694: Advanced Manufacturing and Structural Materials, and MAT E 673: Welding Metallurgy), presented 2 shared research papers at the 2014 CanWeld conference, and have been co-PIs on 1 NSERC CRD ($168,000) and 1 CFI grant ($500,000).

The interdisciplinary research and collaboration carried out by the CCWJ will expand a key engineering field in Alberta, and offer more opportunities for education of undergraduate and graduate students and post-doctoral fellows. Moreover, the CCWJ will provide the optimal basis to meet the main challenge of welding as an engineering discipline, the combination of fundamental and applied research in an interdisciplinary context. By bringing together deep aspects of materials science including thermodynamics and phase transformations, as well as the heat transfer aspects of mechanical engineering, the power electronics of electrical engineering, and the materials performance issues of civil and mechanical constructions, the CCWJ will be a hub of activities for students, faculty, and industry.

The establishment of the CCWJ as an Academic Centre will foster future successful collaboration, and encourage further collaborations in typically unrelated research fields such as plasma physics, fluid mechanics, electromagnetism, turbulence, microstructural evolution, health impact, electrical circuits, and more. The recognition the Welding Research Lab has received to date by the international research community is only a small indication of what innovative energies the CCWJ will release.
I strongly support the establishment of the CCWJ as a GFC-recognized Centre at the University of Alberta. I am excited about this unique endeavor, and am looking forward to future collaborations with the CCWJ. Sincerely,

Leijun Li, P.Eng.
September 30, 2019

Dr. Steven Dew  
Provost and Vice-President (Academic)  
University of Alberta  
2-40 South Academic Building (SAB)  
University of Alberta  
Edmonton, AB T6G 2G7  
Canada  

RE: Letter of Support for the Canadian Centre of Welding and Joining (CCWJ), University of Alberta

Dear Dr. Dew:

It is my great pleasure to provide this letter of support for establishing the Canadian Centre of Welding and Joining (CCWJ) at the University of Alberta.

I have been collaborating with Prof. Patricio Mendez since 2015 and feel that this collaboration is not only a great example for the benefits of interdisciplinary research, but also a strong indicator why the establishment of the centre is important to the UofA research community.

As part of this collaboration, I was involved in the MSc thesis of a student performing fatigue experiments on large pieces of drilling equipment that were rebuilt to spec from a worn state by using industrial laser cladding technology. We were able to apply statistical analysis methodologies from the field of medicine and demonstrate the feasibility of this technology through a specific and relatively small experimental pool. It is needless to say that the methodology and findings of this work are of great economic interest to the manufacturing industry and for the end user. This research met with great interest from the industry and is the scientific foundation of an applied research project that is currently being prepared with an industrial partner.

The scope of the research carried out at Prof. Mendez’s Welding Research Lab becomes clear when reflecting on the fact that the area of my own research on infectious complications of solid organ transplant patients seems far away from
welding. Bridging the disciplines and using our shared interest in the area of statistical analysis of experiments to bring together two different perspectives has been highly productive. I am co-author of a paper which was presented at the 2016 CWA CanWeld conference, and I anticipate much more application of my expertise in medical statistics in the field of welding.

I am convinced that establishing the Canadian Centre for Welding and Joining as a GFC-recognized centre at the university will provide a structure that encourages and support such interdisciplinary collaborations in advanced research and will be the nucleus for innovation and creativity spanning numerous disciplines and applications.

Yours sincerely,

Carlos Cervera, MD, PhD. Assistant Professor
Medical Director, Transplant Infectious Disease
Department of Medicine, Division of Infectious Diseases
University of Alberta
September 25, 2019

Dr. Steven Dew
Provost and Vice-President (Academic)
University of Alberta
2-40 South Academic Building (SAB)
University of Alberta
Edmonton, AB T6G 2G7
Canada

Re: Letter of Support for the Canadian Centre of Welding and Joining (CCWJ),
University of Alberta

Dear Dr. Dew:
I am very pleased to see the effort undertaken by Prof. Patricio Mendez and the Dean of Engineering to establish the Canadian Centre of Welding and Joining (CCWJ) at the University of Alberta, and am writing this letter to express my support for this endeavour.

I have collaborated with Prof. Patricio Mendez over the years in the area of image recognition and machine learning, in what is now commonly summarized under the umbrella term of artificial intelligence. This effort has significantly increased over the past two years, when we embarked on a project on using convolutional neural network (CNNs) to classify microstructures with deep learning. For this project we hired a young and highly talented Computer Science undergraduate student who had worked with Prof. Mendez’s group before, and also involved one of Prof. Mendez’s doctoral students who is an expert in metallurgy. This project was extremely successful, and within a short time we were able to put together a program with an astounding success rate.

The findings of this project have been presented at international conferences, such as the 2018 AWS Fabtech Professional Program, and at CanWeld Conference 2018. Projects like this only happen if one has the right structure that brings together researchers and talented students from a range of academic backgrounds. For this reason I strongly support the establishment of the CCWJ, as this centre will provide not only the ideal platform for such interactions to happen, but the international recognition of the CCWJ has and will continue to attract highly motivated, excellent, and successful students, and contribute to the reputation of the University of Alberta.

I look forward to continuing my collaboration, and am particularly excited about the new possibilities and large-scale projects that a formal recognition as an academic centre will enable.

Sincerely,

Sirish L. Shah

Sirish L. Shah, FCAE
Emeritus Professor

Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering
Appendices

The information collected here relates mostly to the track record of the current Welding Lab. Publications and grants in collaboration with the proposed partners are included. The existing Welding Lab at the Faculty of Engineering is the natural reference for the past welding activities at UofA.
Appendix A: Vision and Mission

Mandate of Weldco/Industry Chair

Vision:
The Canadian Centre for Welding and Joining will ensure that Canada holds a pre-eminent position as a leader in research and development, education and application of welding and joining technologies.

Mission:
The Canadian Centre for Welding and Joining will be dedicated to the creation and dissemination of knowledge in the areas of materials joining, welding specifications and design, and joining process development. The main application focus of the Centre will be in meeting the needs of Canadian resource-based industries.

Objectives & Activities:
The Centre activities will include high-quality research on novel welding and joining processes, materials, testing methods, and supporting technologies. The other key Centre activity is the training of graduate students and other researchers in the fundamental principles and technologies of advanced welding and joining. Additionally, the Centre should undertake dissemination activities aimed at the practicing engineer to ensure opportunities for on-going professional development.
Appendix B: Collaborative Publications and Presentations

Entries with an asterisk (*) mark UofA collaborations.

Papers in archival journals


Papers in refereed conference proceedings

Papers in conference proceedings
Conference Abstracts


Co-Advised Students

Undergraduate Students

*Amanda Dubrule. Co-advised with Prof. N. Cherry (UofA, Preventive Medicine)

*Anurag Talati. Co-advised with Prof. V. Prasad (UofA, control of welding processes)

Megan Ho. Co-advised with Prof. V. Prasad (UofA, control of welding processes)

*Kyle Foster. Co-advised with Prof. R. Sydora (UofA, Physics)

*Ruzhen Xu. Co-advised with Prof. R. Sydora (UofA, Physics)

*Choong Heng Jie. Co-advised with Prof. R. Sydora (UofA, Physics)

*Paul D. Gelinas. Co-advised with Prof. R. Sydora (UofA, Physics)

Benjamin Vergara Mesina. Advisor of BSc thesis (UCHile, Mechanical Engineering)

David Apaoblaza Chaer. Advisor of BSc thesis (UCHile, Mechanical Engineering)

Ivan Ignacio Gonzalez Perez. Co-advisor of BSc thesis (UCHile, Mechanical Engineering)

Eriel Perez Zapico. Co-advisor of BSc thesis (UCHile, Mechanical Engineering)

Joaquin Vara Vargas. Co-advisor of BSc thesis (UCHile, Mechanical Engineering)

Stefano Sacco Hawas. Co-advisor of BSc thesis (UCHile, Mechanical Engineering)

Francisco Ignacio Cubillos Baldessari. Co-advisor of BSc thesis (UCHile, Mechanical Engineering)

*Kevin Wang. Co-advised with Prof. S. Shah (UofA, artificial intelligence)

Graduate Students

Anna Tokas. PhD. Co-advised with V. Ponomarov (UFU Brazil, MecE)
Hossein Izadi, PhD. Co-advised with Prof. A. Gerlich (UofA, now University of Waterloo)
*Jordan Tsui. MSc. Co-advised with Prof. A. Gerlich (UofA, now University of Waterloo)
*Kyle Foster. MSc. (ongoing). Co-advised with Prof. R. Sydora (UofA, Physics)
*Matthew Dewar. MSc. Co-advised with Prof. A. Gerlich (UofA, now University of Waterloo)
*Satya Gajapathi. MSc. Co-advised with Prof. S. Mitra (UofA, Mechanical Engineering)
*Steven Duncan. MSc. Co-advised with Prof. T. Joseph (UofA, Mining)
Alfredo Delgado Alvarez. PhD. Co-advised with Prof. M. Ramirez (UNAM, Mexico)
*Habiba Imam. MSc. Co-advised with Prof. R. Ahmad (UofA, MecE)
Arturo Morales Antonio. MSc. Co-advised with Prof. M. Ramirez (UNAM, Mexico)
Alberto Velazques Sanchez. MSc. Co-advised with Prof. M. Ramirez (UNAM, Mexico)
Kevin Scott. PhD. (Colorado School of Mines, USA)
Jose Alberto Bejarano. MSc. (UNAL, Colombia)

Postdoctoral Fellows
*Hossein Izadi, PhD. Co-advised with Prof. B. Quemerais (UofA, Preventive Medicine)

Co-Developed Courses
MAT E 454: Welding Metallurgy (with A. Gerlich)
MAT E 466/630 Special Topics in Material Engineering: Fundamentals of Welding (with L. Li)
MAT E 466/694: Advanced Manufacturing and Structural Materials (with L. Li)
Appendix C: Collaborative Projects


**NSERC CRD Group Six Technologies, Automation and modeling of a novel laser cladding process to repair and rebuild worn components for extreme applications.** PI R. Ahmad (UofA) and P. Mendez. 2019


**NSERC CRD Syncrude, Heat and mass transfer phenomena in the application of wire-based Ni-WC overlays, PI P. Mendez and A. Gerlich (UofA). 2011.**


**GCCIR/ZIM, Germany/Alberta 2+2, ProLas.** Group Six Technologies (Canada), DURUM Verschleiss - Schutz GmbH (Germany), Fraunhofer IPK (Germany), UofA. 2016.


**Alberta Enterprise and Advanced Education, Partnership between the University of Alberta and BAM (Germany),** Pl. P. Mendez and M. Rethmeier (Fraunhofer IPK/BAM, Germany). 2013.

**Auto21, Tailor-Welded Blank Manufacturing of Mg Alloy Parts.** PI P. Mendez and A. Gerlich, 2015.
## Appendix D: Student Success – Scholarships and Industry Placement
### Awards and Scholarships

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Award Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2019</td>
<td>Alejandro Hintze</td>
<td>CWB WF UofA Student Award</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tenaris Rocca Fellowship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Alysen Townsley</td>
<td>AWS Alberta Section Scholarship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dmytro Havrylov</td>
<td>CWB WF UofA Student Award</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yingxin (Julie) Song</td>
<td>CWA Edmonton Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kyle Foster</td>
<td>CWA Edmonton Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mehera Salah</td>
<td>Loran Scholar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mitchell Grams</td>
<td>AWS District Scholarship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Future Leader Program, Board of Directors AWS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yi Lu</td>
<td>AWS District Scholarship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>China Institute Student Travel Scholarship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ying Wang</td>
<td>AWS District Scholarship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AWS Leadership Symposium 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>China Institute Student Travel Scholarship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2018</td>
<td>Alejandro Hintze</td>
<td>Captain Thomas Farrell Greenhalgh Memorial Graduate Scholarship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kevin Wang</td>
<td>CWA Edmonton</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mitchell Grams</td>
<td>CWA Edmonton Scholarship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Environmental Engineering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Syed Alam</td>
<td>AWS Alberta Section Prize in Welding Engineering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yi Lu</td>
<td>CWA National Scholarship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Neil McEwen Scholarship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ying Wang</td>
<td>CWA National Scholarship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IIW Travel Bursary Bali</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TW Fraser and Shirley Russell Teaching Fellowship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2017</td>
<td>Dmytro Havrylov</td>
<td>Captain Thomas Farrell Greenhalgh Memorial Graduate Scholarship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yi Lu</td>
<td>CWA Edmonton Chapter Scholarship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ying Wang</td>
<td>DB Robinson Graduate Scholarship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2016</td>
<td>Cory McIntosh</td>
<td>CWA Post-Secondary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Queen Elizabeth II Graduate Scholarship-Master’s level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Shell Enhanced Learning Fund (SELF)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dmytro Havrylov</td>
<td>University of Alberta Doctoral Recruitment Scholarship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gentry Wood</td>
<td>APEGA Ivan Finlay Leadership Award</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Canadian Commission of IIW Bursary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Profiling Alberta's Graduate Students Award (FGSR Travel Award)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Goetz Dapp</td>
<td>University of Alberta Excellence in Leadership Award</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Matthew Bell</td>
<td>Graduate Scholarship Advanced Education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mitchell Grams</td>
<td>AWS Jerry Hope Endowment Scholarship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Chevron Graduate Scholarship in Natural Gas Engineering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>FGSR Profiling Alberta's Graduate Students Award</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Green &amp; Gold Student Leadership and Professional Development Grant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>GSA Academic Travel Award</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Queen Elizabeth II Graduate Scholarship-Master’s level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nairn Barnes</td>
<td>AWS Fellowship (renewal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>FGSR Travel Bursary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Queen Elizabeth II Graduate Scholarship-Doctoral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Patricio Mendez</td>
<td>CWA CanWeld Conference Gold Medal Award</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Michael N. Vuchnich Award</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Recipient</td>
<td>Award Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2015</td>
<td>Aliya Lakhani</td>
<td>CEMF Engineering Ambassador Scholarship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Education Abroad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Green &amp; Gold Student Leadership and Professional Development Grant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Student Union Social Justice and Activism Award</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>URI Undergraduate Researcher Stipend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ata Kamyabi</td>
<td>CWA Edmonton Graduate Annual Award for Excellence in Welding Engineering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Eddie Alvarez Rocha</td>
<td>CWA Edmonton Graduate Annual Award for Excellence in Welding Engineering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gentry Wood</td>
<td>Neil McEwen Memorial Graduate Scholarship in Welding (Materials) Engineering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gentry Wood</td>
<td>Petro-Canada Graduate Scholarship in Petroleum Engineering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Goetz Dapp</td>
<td>2015 Information Technology Unsung Hero Award</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Finalist: University of Alberta Award for Outstanding Mentorship in Undergraduate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Research and Creative Activities (Early Career Faculty)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Matthew Bell</td>
<td>Queen Elizabeth II Graduate Scholarship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Max der Boghossain</td>
<td>AWS Poster Competition, First Prize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mitchell Grams</td>
<td>Alexander Graham Bell Canada Graduate Scholarship NSERC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Captain Thomas Farrell Greenhalgh Memorial Graduate Scholarship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Walter H. Johns Graduate Fellowship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nairn Barnes</td>
<td>AWS Graduate Fellowship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Petro-Canada Graduate Scholarship in Petroleum Engineering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Patricio Mendez</td>
<td>AWS Savage Award</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>University of Alberta Award for Outstanding Mentorship in Undergraduate Research</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>and Creative Activities (Established Faculty Category)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yi Lu</td>
<td>Captain Thomas Farrell Greenhalgh Memorial Graduate Scholarship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2014</td>
<td>Ata Kamyabi</td>
<td>Profiling Alberta's Graduate Students Award</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Queen Elizabeth II Graduate Scholarship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gentry Wood</td>
<td>AWS District Scholarship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AWS Leadership Symposium Scholarship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AWS Student Chapter Member Award</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CWA University of Alberta Welding Engineering Scholarship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Graduate Student Association Teaching Assistant Award</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Leijun Li</td>
<td>ASM Fellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WH Hobart Memorial Award</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Patricio Mendez</td>
<td>ASM M. Brian Ives Lectureship Award - an individual who has made distinguished and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>significant contributions to the Canadian Materials community</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AWS Adams Memorial Membership Award</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AWS Fellow - Career of significant achievements in the technical and research arenas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2013</td>
<td>Welding Research Lab</td>
<td>AWS Image of Welding: Educational Facility Award</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Eddie Alvarez Rocha</td>
<td>1st Place in the Mece design competition and &quot;Shop Award&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>John Andreiuk</td>
<td>TMS Extraction and Processing Division Scholarship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Jordan Tsui</td>
<td>AUTO21 Conference, Best in Theme award (Materials and Processing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mitchell Grams</td>
<td>NSERC Student Research Award</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nairn Barnes</td>
<td>ASM Senior Design Competition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AWS, District Award</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Patricio Mendez</td>
<td>AWS William Irrgang Memorial Award</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CWA Fellowship Award</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Satya Gajapathi</td>
<td>IIW Henry Granjon Prize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Position Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2019</td>
<td>Ata Kamyabi Gol</td>
<td>Welding R&amp;D Engineer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kévin Mussard</td>
<td>Responsable de production at NAVAL GROUP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unmesh Padalkar</td>
<td>Data Scientist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Julien Chapuis</td>
<td>Welding Methods Expert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kévin Mussard</td>
<td>Chef Monteur (RTE de sous traitant) pour Naval Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Matthew Bell</td>
<td>Materials Engineer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Niko Wolf</td>
<td>Consultant for Siemens Management Consulting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Shahrukh Al Islam</td>
<td>Management Consultant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Simon Pohardy</td>
<td>Welding Operation Engineer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vivek Sengupta</td>
<td>Consumable Research and Development Manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2017</td>
<td>Gentry Wood</td>
<td>Research and Development Engineer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kévin Mussard</td>
<td>Responsable Technique d’Execution pour Naval Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kurtis Bell</td>
<td>Asset Integrity Specialist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nairn Barnes</td>
<td>Junior Welding Engineer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Satya Gajapathi</td>
<td>Innovation Lead, Advanced Manufacturing and Welding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Simon Pohardy</td>
<td>Welding Engineer in Training</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Canadian Centre for Welding and Joining
Proposal to establish a new Academic Centre

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Position/Role</th>
<th>Organization/Institution</th>
<th>Degree</th>
<th>Year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2016</td>
<td>Jordan Tsui</td>
<td>Welding Engineer</td>
<td>Evraz (Saskatchewan)</td>
<td>MSc</td>
<td>2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kévin Mussard</td>
<td>Alternant ingénieur soudeur</td>
<td>GRTgaz</td>
<td>MSc (Visiting)</td>
<td>2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unmesh Padalkar</td>
<td>Analyst</td>
<td>Axis Bank</td>
<td>BSc (Visiting)</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2015</td>
<td>Ata Kamyabi Gol</td>
<td>Assistant Professor</td>
<td>Fedorsi University of Mashad (Iran)</td>
<td>PhD</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hossein Izadi</td>
<td>Head of Materials Department Sun Air Research Institute</td>
<td>Fedorsi University of Mashad (Iran)</td>
<td>PhD</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Matthew Dewar</td>
<td>Process Engineer</td>
<td>Group Six Technologies (Edmonton)</td>
<td>MSc</td>
<td>2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2014</td>
<td>Kevin Scott</td>
<td>New Product Introduction Engineer</td>
<td>Emerson</td>
<td>MSc</td>
<td>2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Steven Borle</td>
<td>Materials Engineer</td>
<td>Group Six Technologies (Edmonton)</td>
<td>MSc</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stuart Guest</td>
<td>Assistant Team Lead Materials</td>
<td>Stantec (Calgary)</td>
<td>PhD</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2013</td>
<td>J. Eduardo Alvarez Rocha</td>
<td>ABSA IPV, ABSA Welding Examiner, API 510 and CSA W178.2 Level 2 Inspector; QA Lead</td>
<td>Polo Inspections Ltd. (Owner, Edmonton)</td>
<td>BSc</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Julien Chapuis</td>
<td>Manager of Welding Processes Unit at AREVA NP</td>
<td>Areva</td>
<td>Post-doc</td>
<td>2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Satya Gajapathi</td>
<td>Innovation Project Manager</td>
<td>Ultterra</td>
<td>MSc</td>
<td>2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2011</td>
<td>Kevin Scott</td>
<td>Arc Research Scientist</td>
<td>Miller Electric</td>
<td>MSc</td>
<td>2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Satya Gajapathi</td>
<td>Process Development Engineer</td>
<td>Apollo Clad</td>
<td>MSc</td>
<td>2011</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix E: Photos from events and quotes from our participants

Top: Welding Research Lab Team and Collaborator Leijun Li (Left), Arrival of new Welding Gear (Right)
Middle: Virtual Welder in ETLC, January 2015 (Left), Lab Tour for St. Joseph’s High School 2015 (Right)
Bottom: Seminar by Prof. John Goldak (Carleton, now Adjunct Professor UofA) and Lab Tour, May 2015
Top: Visit by GALD delegation, China, 2015 (Left), Visit J.Percy Page High School 2015 (Right)
Middle: Seminar on Duplex / Superduplex Stainless Steels 2014 (Left), CWA Lab Tour 2014 (Right)
Bottom: Seminar on Design of Welded Connections 2019 (Left), AMFI Lab Tour 2014 (Right)
AMFI:
“Great educational material and well presented. Excellent knowledge of materials, great presenters, great discussions throughout [the] workshop [...].” Ian Cotnam, Metal Alloy
“[...] vast knowledge of presenters with industry experience. [...] Eye opening what is taking place behind the scenes.” Tim MacIntyre, Suncor
“Large amount of knowledge in short amount of time – very efficient.” Will Morlidge, Exchanger Industries
“[Most valuable of the lab tour was] seeing progress being made in bring[ing] welding understanding into [the] 21st century in Alberta. Good on you all! Proud of what Alberta is doing.” Mel Meunier, Aero Trailer

Outreach:
“The clips that you have on YouTube are fantastic and obviously more up to date than the footage that I currently use.” Darren Jefferies, Senior Welding Inspection lecturer, TWI Ltd
“Thanks again for providing these clips. It will make my job easier.” Mark Stathers, Okanagan Welding Dept. Okanagan College.
“Thanks for the openness to share findings, video, etc.!” Mark Robinson, Alberta Pipe Trades College

Lab Tours:
“Thank you so much for sharing your lab and your team’s research with the UAlberta Ambassadors. Several of them came to me after and told me that it was one of the coolest things they’d seen on campus. You knowledge and passion for welding research was a joy to see!” Jenna, UofA Ambassadors

CWA/CWB:
“Events hosted by the [Welding Research Lab] or AMFI provide opportunity to network with Industry partners with the same passion to invest and improve our welding industry. It is great exposure to showcase updates and initiatives of our company.” Ken McKen, CWB

Seminars:
“Wonderful lecture and discussion!” Ken Bird, Supreme Steel

Classes:
“This is the best university level course that I have ever taken. [...]I've never had another class with a lab component that was actually extremely useful and applicable.” (MAT E630/466, 2016)
“Excellent course. Learned tonnes of valuable and relevant information related to welding. Prof was excellent and the course was well organized.” (MAT E630/466, 2012)
“General course quality is really good and helps me in my work as well, really an awesome class.” (MAT E630/466, 2012)
“I will definitely recommend this course to everyone I know. It is a good welding background course. Now I can have a decent conversation about welding during the ASM dinners!” (MAT E630/466, 2012)
“Prof. Mendez is so dedicated to teach student with the highest quality and integrity. He did everything to help each student understand the topics very well.” (MAT E630/466, 2013)
“(...] the quality of information provided was very high. This was the most practical and useful university course I have taken.” (MAT E630/466, 2011)
“I REALLY enjoyed the combination of lecture, demonstrations, and hands-on experience. I liked the small class size and the open discussions.” (MAT E630/466, 2011)
Appendix E: Chair Proposal and Report on Value Chain Mapping
DRAFT Proposal to:

The Welding and Joining Industry

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Project Title</th>
<th>University of Alberta Industry Chair in Welding and Joining</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Faculty of Engineering, University of Alberta</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Synopsis**

This proposal presents an opportunity for industry users of welding and joining technology to support an initiative to significantly enhance welding and joining research and technology development in Alberta and Canada. In association with the Faculty of Engineering and the University of Alberta’s Century Campaign, our key partners will play a crucial role in this vital and evolving field.

**Rationale**

Not since the 1960’s has the University of Alberta had such a dramatic opportunity to shape its future. We invite our stakeholders to join us in ensuring the University continues to meet the needs of our students, our communities, and our business partners for decades to come. **Together, we have an extraordinary opportunity to shape the University of Alberta as we chart our course for the 21st century.**

Strategic alliances are critical to achieving our goal of becoming indisputably recognized, nationally and internationally, as one of Canada’s finest universities. The U of A is committed to the pursuit of “win-win” partnerships that will fully meet the needs of our corporate partners and individual supporters while fulfilling the priorities of the University of Alberta.
Faculty Growth
In 1972 the Faculty of Engineering undergraduate enrolment was 1,180. In 2004, this enrolment has almost tripled to over 3,200 students, and the University of Alberta is now in the top 5% of over 400 engineering schools in North America.

The recent rapid growth in the Faculty of Engineering, supported by strong demand from employers and high-quality students, is part of a government-approved expansion. This on-going expansion will result in the total undergraduate engineering enrolment reaching a level of approximately 3,500 students by September 2004.

Graduate enrolments in the Faculty of Engineering have also expanded tremendously. From 191 students in 1972 to over 1000 students in 2004 graduate student enrolment has grown by almost 500%. Further increases to 1,200 graduate students are expected by 2005–2006. At this enrolment level for graduate students, the Faculty of Engineering at the University of Alberta will be one of the largest engineering schools in North America.

Faculty Recruitment & Retention
Supporting the undergraduate and graduate program expansions has required a substantial increase in the number of faculty members. Since 1972, our 88-member faculty has almost doubled in size to 165. A faculty complement of 185–190 professors is needed by 2004–2005 to support the enrolment increases. The growth in staff numbers (and student enrolment) has placed tremendous strain on the current physical facilities.

One-third of today’s University of Alberta teachers and researchers—scholars who have been at the forefront of their fields for generations—will retire over the next five years. These talented individuals have built the University of Alberta, and we are committed to maintaining their impressive legacies. The quality of the educators and researchers we hire over the next five years will be crucial in maintaining and enhancing our reputation as one of the top universities in Canada and in the world.

The Faculty of Engineering has been extremely successful in attracting faculty members of the highest quality. More than 110 new professors have been appointed since 1996 and we must retain these outstanding new faculty members. We need to recruit 35 additional professors in the period 2003–2005. This recruitment will depend on our ability to provide appropriate new infrastructure and facilities for the support of the educational and research activities in the Faculty of Engineering.
Department of Chemical & Materials Engineering

The Department of Chemical & Materials Engineering currently has 37 faculty members, 420 undergraduate students, and 130 graduate students. In recent years, the department has seen significant growth due, in part, to the following changes:

- establishment of five NSERC Industrial Research Chair programs and two Canada Research Chairs since 1996;
- creation of the Oilsands Engineering program;
- creation of the Industry Advisory Committee in Materials Engineering in 1995;
- continued growth of our undergraduate Co-op education program (30% increase since 1998); and
- a share of the 40% increase in the graduate program enrolments in the Faculty of Engineering since 1998.

Enrolment in the Materials Engineering graduate program has grown from 15 students in 1995 to 45 in 2003.

Welding Engineering Program

The University of Alberta Welding Engineering Program is a graduate program within the Faculty of Engineering, supported by the Departments of Civil, Mechanical and its home department of Chemical & Materials Engineering. It is the only graduate program in welding application, design, engineering, and research in Canada and the only welding program focused on pressure vessel and pipeline industry requirements. This program is particularly relevant to the needs of the western Canadian industry base. In addition to the graduate program, the welding process and metallurgy courses are available to senior undergraduates as technical electives. Many graduates who have taken these courses hold significant positions in industries important to the Alberta economy and in consulting engineering positions that support the economy.

The program provides an understanding of welding processes, metallurgy and design, and includes courses on quality assurance and testing. Welding instruction is supported by a Welding Laboratory in Chemical and Materials Engineering. The processes in this laboratory include most of the standard arc welding processes and also a resistance spot welder and a plasma transferred arc welder for cladding.

Graduates from the program are suited for careers in such diverse areas as pressure vessel or structural engineering, petroleum and gas processing industries and chemical plant fabrication. The program has been in place formally since 1979. Over this period some 27 degrees in welding engineering have been conferred and there are currently seven graduate students in the program. Our graduates have been placed in key welding engineering positions throughout Canada and in the rest of North America.
**Chair Description**

The Chair in Welding and Joining will initially consider research which is important and relevant to the Alberta industry base and may include areas such as:

- Aging and embrittlement mechanisms and associated repair techniques
- Improved welding processes/techniques for the application of wear resisting overlays
- Welding techniques for ultra-high strength pipeline materials
- Improved NDT and other inspection techniques
- Education of the existing welding engineering practitioners
- Explosion bonding for high temperature applications

Many research projects have been conducted in the Welding Engineering Laboratory since the program started. A comprehensive array of welding processes is available, along with diagnostic instrumentation and non-destructive testing capability. Much of the work is in welding pipeline steels, for both welding process and welding metallurgy interests. Other projects have studied hydrogen disbanding of stainless steel cladding in pressure vessels, which is of interest to oil and gas processing industries, and the narrow gap welding of large pressure vessels, which is of importance for large scale processing of heavy oils and coal. Present projects include the analysis of alternating current parameters in the GTAW and SMAW processes, the behaviour of short-circuiting parameters using computer-controlled power sources, SMAW weld metal properties in high strength structural steels, residual stresses in narrow-gap welds and the effects of oil contamination and humidity on SWAW electrodes.

**Opportunity**

A gift of $140,000 from seven key welding industry partners per year over a ten-year period will enable the Faculty of Engineering to develop the **Industry Chair in Welding and Joining** to focus on welding engineering, research and education.

In partnership with the CRC/CFI, NSERC, and the Faculty of Engineering, a 5.5:1 match will be provided for the duration of the funding agreement of the Chair to ensure its immediate establishment and full operation. At the end of the ten-year period, the endowment will be fully established and will fund the **Industry Chair in Welding and Joining** in perpetuity. With industry participation, the Faculty of Engineering at the University of Alberta will put this crucial initiative in place, significantly adding to growing efforts in an area in which the University of Alberta is already internationally recognized for its excellence.

The investment by users of welding and joining technology of $140,000 per year over ten years is leveraged through matching funds, partner contributions and endowment yield to become an
**Overall Investment**

The overall investment of over $9,000,000. A fully funded chair will be endowed in perpetuity in the process.

The seven select industry members are requested to commit to $20,000 per year for ten years. This payment plan is only a suggestion and the Faculty of Engineering would be pleased to discuss an alternate schedule that meets the needs of all partners.

**Recognition**

In addition to making each of the participating company’s names prominent within the Faculty of Engineering, the University of Alberta will continue to recognize all participants in appropriate U of A publications: “The U of A Engineer” (Engineering alumni magazine); “New Trail” (U of A alumni magazine), “U of A Report to the Community”; and so on. As well, a major recognition event will be organized to publicly acknowledge the significant support from industry partners for research and education in this vital area of engineering.

The Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering, the School of Mining Engineering, and the Faculty of Engineering Co-op Education office will offer their assistance. There is a growing need for engineers whose academic training is directly applicable to the welding engineering field. Focused and knowledgeable students will be available for co-op work placements with the potential for permanent placement on the Industry Chair members’ teams.

This opportunity for branding, name recognition, and reputation management on the U of A campus, specifically within the Faculty of Engineering, will position all members as industry leaders and employers of choice for graduating engineering students.

Finally, the Faculty of Engineering, in partnership with select industry companies, will prepare a fitting media campaign to promote the gift to appropriate constituencies across Alberta and Canada.

**Summary**

The cost of welding to Canadian industry is estimated at $3.6bn in 2002 or 0.365% of GDP. This is both a cost to Canadian industry and an opportunity for significant cost savings with improved technology and application techniques. However, these savings cannot be realised without enhancement in skills at all levels. The retention and expansion of the program would be an important contribution to that enhancement. The establishment of the University of Alberta Industry Chair in Welding and Joining as part of Canada’s only welding degree program will greatly enhance the welding engineering research and education that is currently being conducted at the University of Alberta. The Faculty of Engineering earnestly seeks your commitment to this very worthy initiative.
Contact Information

Thank you for your consideration of this proposal. If you have any comments or would like further information, please contact:

Katherine Irwin
Acting Manager, External Relations
Faculty of Engineering
University of Alberta
E6-050 ETLC
Edmonton AB T6G 2V4
PHONE: (780) 492-1317
FAX: (780) 492-0500
katherine.irwin@ualberta.ca

David M. Petis
Assistant Dean, External Relations
Faculty of Engineering
University of Alberta
E6-050 ETLC
Edmonton AB T6G 2V4
PHONE: (780) 492-5080
FAX: (780) 492-0500
david.petis@ualberta.ca

David T. Lynch, PhD, P.Eng.
Dean, Faculty of Engineering
University of Alberta
E6-050 ETLC
Edmonton AB T6G 2V4
PHONE: (780) 492-3596
FAX: (780) 492-0500
david.lynch@ualberta.ca
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY .................................................................................................................................. 3

1.0 PURPOSE OF THE PROJECT .................................................................................................................. 6

2.0 QUANTITATIVE ANALYSIS ................................................................................................................... 6

3.0 MANUFACTURING SECTOR INTERVIEWS AND FOCUS GROUP ..................................................... 12
   3.1 Purpose ............................................................................................................................................. 12
   3.2 Interview Process ............................................................................................................................. 12
   3.3 Interview and Focus Group Findings ............................................................................................. 14
      3.31 Industry Demographics .............................................................................................................. 14
      3.32 Growth Opportunities Identified ............................................................................................... 15
      3.33 Barriers to Growth .................................................................................................................... 16
      3.34 Experience with Collaboration .................................................................................................. 18
      3.35 Role of EEDC and other agencies ............................................................................................. 21

4.0 RECOMMENDATIONS .......................................................................................................................... 22
   4.1 Support for Cluster Growth ........................................................................................................... 22
      4.11 Efficiency Oriented Strategies ................................................................................................... 23
      4.12 Business Innovation and Growth – a new mechanism for collaboration .................................. 23
   4.2 Cluster Advocacy: Engage Civic and Senior Governments .......................................................... 23

5.0 CONCLUSION ..................................................................................................................................... 24

APPENDIX 1. INTERVIEW GUIDE ............................................................................................................. 25

APPENDIX 2. LIST OF COMPANIES ......................................................................................................... 31
Executive Summary

As part of the Greater Edmonton Competitiveness Strategy, Edmonton Economic Development Corporation (EEDC) engaged private consultants and mobilized a wide range of stakeholders in the analysis of the economic structure, strengths and participants in the region’s economy. EEDC asked QGI Consulting to assist with the extension of the cluster strategy using an application of the theory of value chains. Layering the value chain model onto the existing cluster framework provides for a deeper understanding of the structure and behaviour of firms in the Edmonton manufacturing cluster, particularly with respect to the degree of effective collaboration between firms within the cluster.

The study included both quantitative analysis of publicly available information about the structure of the cluster and a series of interviews and focus group with firms within the cluster. Analysis of the structure of the cluster revealed that Edmonton’s manufacturing sector is the fastest growing manufacturing cluster in Canada and that it is much more important to the regional economy than may be commonly thought. Companies in the Metal Products manufacturing sub-clusters alone generate an estimated $3.7 to $4.0 billion per year in revenue and have operating profits estimated at $210 to $240 million. The employment generated by this group of companies is three times as large as that provided by all elementary, secondary, technical schools and universities in the region, combined. The Metal Products manufacturing sub-cluster was found to have a logical value chain structure within the local economy and it was selected as the focus of examination for this study.

When broken out into sub-clusters, the largest were found to be the Oil and Gas Field Machinery firms and Machine Shops. When examined in terms of their growth from 2000-2003 the fastest growing sub-clusters were the two largest mentioned above, with the addition of the Valves, Compressors and Pumps manufacturers. These three groups had employment growth rates of from 15-27% over the period.

With input from the project sponsors, 13 representative firms were selected to participate in interviews of 1-2 hours each. The interviews covered the following areas:

- What are the firm’s primary products and markets and in which areas do they believe lie their greatest opportunities for growth?
- How does the firm currently collaborate with suppliers, customers, and peers or competitors?
- What does the firm believe are the primary barriers to increasing the level of value added manufacturing being done in the Edmonton region?
- What role might EEDC or other agencies play in improving the effectiveness of collaboration amongst Edmonton region manufacturers?

Following the interview process, four individuals from the Alberta government and University of Alberta were also interviewed to review the results of the survey and validate the findings.

Many of the companies interviewed are currently or were previously family-owned businesses and this type of business may be more likely to be risk averse compared to larger or more financially diversified firms. The interviews also revealed that many of the companies engaged in contract manufacturing had only short-term contracts with their clients and that most of their business was generated by long-term personal relationships between the business owners or executives and their key clients. Given the short term nature of these contracts, the management of the majority of these firms are very reluctant to invest capital in the facilities, materials and human resources that are required for a firm to move from custom fabrication to product design, manufacturing and marketing.

The firms are also handicapped by the fact that they have little experience with professional strategic business development activities and indeed often have little interaction with their customers beyond responding to technical requests for short-term fabrication contracts. Their lack of market knowledge and insight inhibits their capability to understand the types of product or service innovations that might have commercial value to their customers, their markets and themselves.
There are some very important exceptions to this characterization of Edmonton’s metal products manufacturers. These few exceptional firms are in the small but vital minority. A key distinction that can be made with respect to firms in this sector is between those firms who develop and market proprietary products or components, and those who only provide fabrication or manufacturing services for original equipment manufacturers (OEM’s).

The primary markets for the products and services provided by Edmonton’s metal products manufacturers are the Western Canadian resource extraction industries. For the most part, the firms interviewed identified these sectors as being the source of their greatest potential growth as well. However, a number of the firms expressed a desire to diversify out of the Western Canada resource industries. If a firm produced its own proprietary products it was much more likely to identify either a preference or an active strategy to diversify its markets. Based upon the interviews, QGI Consulting believes that wealth generation for the Edmonton region, and diversification of the Edmonton metal manufacturing cluster away from the Western Canadian oil and gas extraction industry can best be achieved by strategies that encourage the attraction and growth of firms engaged in proprietary products manufacturing.

The key barriers to growth identified in the interviews were, in order of increasing importance (i.e. listed from least to most important:

- Transportation costs
- Lack of specific skills and experience
- Lack of skilled machinists
- General macroeconomic issues
- Lack of a market driven culture

Measuring the collaborative behaviour of firms with their suppliers and customers within the value chain framework is useful because it shows the degree to which firms have adopted a strategic and market driven business model. The interviews revealed that even firms who recognized the importance of collaboration within their cluster or with their suppliers and customers indicated that many of their peers, customers and suppliers were reluctant to engage in meaningful collaborative activities. However, some excellent examples of effective collaboration were identified in the course of the study. For example, some firms have begun to restrict their suppliers to pre-qualified vendors who provide mutually negotiated fixed price and service contracts for their services. For other firms, the recent hiring of full-time professional sales personnel is a step towards deepening the relationships between the machine shops and their clients. A few firms have embarked on formal company wide customer service and change management training with the goal of creating customer focused organizations.

Local best practices in collaboration that were identified include the EEDC and Canadian Manufacturers and Exporters support for the LEAN manufacturing consortium and the EEDC sponsored and facilitated Manufacturers’ Steering Committee. In addition, one of the interview participants identified the effective functioning of the joint University of Alberta Department of Civil Engineering and Natural Sciences and Engineering Research Council (NSERC) program for research and development in construction as an example of best practice in collaboration amongst competing companies, and the operation of this program received special examination in the study.

With respect to the role of EEDC and other agencies in on-going support for the cluster firms, the following areas were identified:

- Networking and Facilitation
- Providing a one-stop-shop for Edmonton manufacturers
- Support for International Marketing
- Raise the profile of Trades training
- Industry Attraction
- Advocacy on Macroeconomic/Tax issues
Based upon the quantitative analysis and interview results, QGI Consulting recommends that EEDC continue and even enhance its support for the activities of this vital economic cluster.

For the majority of firms in this sector, the continued pursuit of activities intended to foster collaboration in areas of business process improvement, general management skills and capabilities and public policy advocacy are appropriate and necessary. Therefore, EEDC involvement with partner institutions and organizations in initiatives like LEAN manufacturing, and the facilitation of the Manufacturers Steering Committee should continue.

However, QGI recommends that EEDC elevate its level of support for firms in the Metal Products Manufacturing sector that have invested in the development and marketing of proprietary products as these companies represent the greatest opportunities for growth of the region’s economy. EEDC should consider partnering with other agencies and departments in the provincial and federal governments, and with the University of Alberta to develop a new forum for innovation and collaboration in the Metal Products Manufacturing sector. Such a model could be based in part upon the existing NSERC/Alberta Construction Industry Research Chair but QGI recommends that government and industry stakeholders be brought together in facilitated discussions to examine what would work best for Alberta and specifically for Edmonton manufacturers. One of the options that should receive serious consideration is the creation of a new Centre for Manufacturing Innovation and Growth, within the business school of the University of Alberta. As Edmonton region manufacturers and other stakeholders have identified a lack of strategic management and marketing capability as a key barrier to future development, such a centre could coordinate multiple initiatives in this area and serve as the nexus of collaboration for Alberta and particularly for Edmonton region manufacturers.

In addition, EEDC should continue to take an active role in creating a favourable policy environment amongst government decision makers in the city, provincial and federal governments with respect to the importance and potential future value of the Metal Products manufacturing sector. The information available from this study on the value and growth of the Metal Products Manufacturing sector can assist EEDC in their communication with political and bureaucratic leadership in the civic and provincial governments to obtain support and funding for initiatives designed to support the growth of this vital engine of economic prosperity.

That EEDC has commissioned this study and that Edmonton manufacturing companies have participated so enthusiastically in the interviews and focus group suggests that the local climate exists to capitalize on this energy and enthusiasm to engage a broader group of regional manufacturers in new initiatives to continue the growth and expansion that has brought such prosperity to our region.

QGI Consulting hopes that the methodology developed for the examination of the Manufacturing Cluster will be of use to EEDC and other agencies in improving their understanding of the structure, behaviour and development of other cluster groups.
1.0 Purpose of the Project

As part of the Greater Edmonton Competitiveness Strategy, Edmonton Economic Development Corporation (EEDC) engaged private consultants and mobilized a wide range of stakeholders in the analysis and diagnosis of the economic structure, strengths and participants in the region’s economy.

This project resulted in the identification of ten principal economic clusters of firms and their associated suppliers, intermediaries and foundation institutions. The definition of these clusters and the mobilization of the business community and associated stakeholders around the development of strategic initiatives in support of these clusters has been a major accomplishment.

EEDC has asked QGI Consulting to assist with the extension of the cluster strategy using an application of the theory of value chains to enhance the current understanding of the Edmonton region economy and to assist in the continuing mobilization of the region’s leading companies and support institutions in the development and implementation of economic strategies.

A deeper understanding of Edmonton’s economic clusters is worthwhile because clusters have been acknowledged by economic development professionals as key sources of competitive advantage for a regional economy. Clusters provide a critical mass of individuals and firms with specialized expertise and interests in a confined geographic area. This grouping of interests and abilities encourages both collaboration and competition, which results in acceleration of the innovative behaviors that keep firms competitive.

In analyzing the structure and competitiveness of Edmonton’s manufacturing cluster, QGI and EEDC have chosen to use the value chain model of economic systems to group specific types of firms according to their relationships to each other and to their customers. The value chain model defines the relationships between firms in terms of the transformation of their inputs and products from primary manufacturing through to final production and sale of end products. The value chain model is an effective way to structure an analysis of an economic system because it is descriptive of the relationships between firms and it emphasizes the importance of collaboration amongst the participants in the chain.

Layering the value chain model onto the existing cluster framework should provide a deeper understanding of not only the structure, but equally importantly of the behaviour of firms in the Edmonton manufacturing cluster. Of particular interest is the degree to which participants in the Edmonton manufacturing cluster engage in effective collaboration with other participants in the cluster. Collaboration drives learning and innovation, which are critical to maintaining competitive advantage. Using the value chain model to structure an analysis of collaborative behavior amongst Edmonton manufacturing firms should ensure a structured and efficient dialogue resulting in a focused set of priorities.

2.0 Quantitative Analysis

In order to confirm and enhance EEDC’s understanding of the structure of the Manufacturing cluster, QGI completed an analysis of business establishment and employment data. EEDC provided QGI with data from the Statistics Canada, “Canadian Business Patterns” (CBP) data product. The CBP data provide counts of firms by North American Industrial Classification System (NAICS) codes at varying levels of detail. QGI used the highly detailed six-digit level of codes in their initial analysis.

QGI extracted data on business establishments in the major Canadian census metropolitan areas, to provide analysis of Edmonton’s manufacturing cluster in comparison to manufacturing in other areas of the country. The data provided by EEDC included a coding of industry groups according to the cluster definitions that were provided in the original analysis performed by ICF Consulting for EEDC. QGI

---

1 In addition to the use of Statistics Canada data, QGI has compiled a list of the firms engaged in manufacturing in the Edmonton Region. This list can be used as a starting point for future activities of EEDC with respect to this cluster. This list is attached to this report as Appendix 2.
reviewed the existing 72 separate NAICS classifications and added an additional 81 NAICS codes to the Manufacturing cluster definition. The data were then sorted according to total employment generated by each code within the Manufacturing cluster group, to identify the top 80% employment generating types of enterprises. This reduced the list from 153 down to 57 specific types of enterprises that remained in the cluster group.

Based upon observation, these 57 NAICS classifications were then grouped into the following sub-clusters:

- Building and Construction Components & Products
- Building Materials
- Electronics Manufacturing
- **Machine Shops and Support**
- **Machinery / Metal Products Manufacturing**
- **Metal Boilers/Containers/Tanks/ and Vessels**
- **Other Metal Components or Parts**
- Other Miscellaneous Manufacturing
- Mineral Products Refining
- Motor Vehicle/Trailer/Motorhome Manufacturing
- Plastics

Upon further analysis and inspection, QGI selected the four sub-clusters that are highlighted above, for more detailed examination. These groupings of firms appear to have a direct value chain relationship and QGI, with the approval of EEDC and IRAP chose to focus the next stage of the project upon understanding the structure and behavior of firms within these industry groups. The following graphs and figures provide a demographic breakdown on the firms in this grouping of sub-clusters that will be called the **Metal Products Manufacturing** sector, for the purposes of this study.

**Figure 1. Composition and Employment of Edmonton Metal Products Manufacturing**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sub-Cluster</th>
<th>NAICS Classification</th>
<th>Number of Firms with &gt;20 employees</th>
<th>Total Employment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Machine Shops and Support</strong></td>
<td>332113 - Forging</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>332118 - Stamping</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>332710 - Machine Shops</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>3,238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>332720 - Turned Product and Screw, Nut and Bolt Manufacturing</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>332810 - Coating, Engraving, Heat Treating and Allied Activities</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>1,113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Machinery/ Metal Products Manufacturing</strong></td>
<td>333110 - Agricultural Implement Manufacturing</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>333120 - Construction Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>333130 - Mining and Oil and Gas Field Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>4,348</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>333310 - Commercial and Service Industry Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>333413 - Industrial and Commercial Fan and Blower and Air Purification</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>333416 - Heating Equipment and Commercial Refrigeration Equipment</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>333920 - Material Handling Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>333990 - All Other General-Purpose Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Metal Boilers/Containers/Tanks/Vessels</strong></td>
<td>332410 - Power Boiler and Heat Exchanger Manufacturing</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>332420 - Metal Tank (Heavy Gauge) Manufacturing</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>798</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>332439 - Other Metal Container Manufacturing</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Other Metal Components or Parts</strong></td>
<td>332910 - Metal Valve Manufacturing</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>878</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>332999 - All Other Miscellaneous Fabricated Metal Product Manufacturing</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>603</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>333511 - Industrial Mould Manufacturing</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>333519 - Other Metalworking Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>388</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>333910 - Pump and Compressor Manufacturing</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>990</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total Metal Products Manufacturing</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>193</td>
<td>15,458</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Firms in the manufacturing sector make up over 5% of the total labour force in the Edmonton region with the Metal Products Manufacturing sub-sector contributing just over half of the total manufacturing employment. While this number may seem low, it represents a significant source of wealth creation and employment in our region. The total number of people working in manufacturing in the Edmonton region is equivalent to:

- 2 times the size of the legal and accounting services industry
- 3 times the employment of all workers and staff at all elementary and secondary schools, colleges universities and technical schools combined
- Equivalent to the employment generated by the entire health care industry in the region.

Figure 2. Size of Metal Products Manufacturing Sectors in Canada

When compared to other regions of the country, we discover that Edmonton’s Metal Products Manufacturing sector is the third largest in the country, and is of relatively greater importance to the Edmonton economy than are the corresponding industry sectors in the other large Canadian metropolitan regions. This measure of relative importance is clearly displayed in the graph below.

Figure 3. Relative Concentration of Manufacturing in Major Canadian Metropolitan Regions
Figure 3 above shows the ratio of the relative concentration of employment in the four target sub-clusters that make up the Metal Products Manufacturing sector within the Edmonton region economy divided by the same relative concentration in Canada as a whole. A location quotient of 1.0 represents average concentration; a quotient greater than 1.0 represents a higher concentration and less than 1.0 represents a smaller concentration.

In addition to being an anchor of the Edmonton region economy, the employment growth data displayed below clearly shows that this sector has grown rapidly as a source of high quality full-time employment in the region.

![Figure 4. Employment Growth of Metal Products Manufacturing](image)

Clearly, Edmonton’s metal products manufacturing sector is a vital source of employment for the regional economy. In order to estimate the financial value to the Edmonton region of this vital economic cluster, QGI Consulting obtained a custom extract of data from Statistics Canada’s Industrial Organization and Finance Division. This data provided corporate revenue, expense and income data for manufacturing enterprises at the national and provincial levels. Using a combination of the Statistics Canada Canadian Business Patterns data and the custom extract data QGI has estimated the total annual revenue of all Metal Products Manufacturing firms in the Edmonton region at between $3.7 and $4.0 billion. Using the same methodology the corresponding estimate of operating profit for such companies is between $210 and $240 million.

---

2 Data could not be obtained at the census metropolitan region level, as it would not be sufficiently accurate due to the exclusion of data that would be required to protect Statistics Canada’s confidentiality policies. The most recent available data was for calendar year 2002.

3 The range of $3.7 to $4.0 billion is based on two calculations used to estimate total revenue. The first was obtained by taking the ratio of employment generated in Edmonton’s metal products manufacturing versus national statistics for the sector multiplied by the total revenue estimate for the sector nationally, as provided by the Statistics Canada Industrial Organization and Finance division. This yielded a value of (0.7 x $59 billion) = $4 billion.

The second estimate used the ratio of the number of enterprises in Edmonton’s Metal Products Manufacturing sector as reported in the Canadian Business patterns data versus the total number of Alberta enterprises in the sector as reported in the Industrial Organization and Finance division data multiplied by the total revenue estimate for the sector in Alberta. This yielded a value of (.64 x $5.8 billion) = $3.7 billion.
The data above forcefully illustrate the importance of this economic cluster and the desirability of EEDC’s continuing to support initiatives designed to grow this critical sector of Edmonton’s economy.

2.1 Edmonton’s Metal Products Manufacturing Value Chain

In order to provide a value chain framework for the next stage of analysis, QGI created a value chain map of the Edmonton Metal Products Manufacturing sector. This value chain map shows the relationship of the various types of enterprises that make up the sector and provides a framework for the continuing analysis of the degree of vertical and horizontal collaboration and integration that may exist.

Figure 5. Metal Products Manufacturing Value Chain

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Horizontal Integration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vertical Integration</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To provide another view of the Metal Products Manufacturing sub-clusters, QGI has prepared bubble charts to illustrate the relative size and growth of the sub-clusters within this sector. In Figure 6 below, the total estimated employment in each sub-cluster of the Metal Products Manufacturing sector is displayed by the width of the bubbles. The number of firms in each sub-cluster is shown on the horizontal axis and the sub-clusters are displayed according to their level on the value chain on the vertical axis. This graph demonstrates that when judged in terms of sub-cluster size, the intermediate levels of the value chain are relatively smaller than either the primary or tertiary levels, in this cluster grouping.
In Figure 7 above, the bubble chart illustrates the relative growth of the sub-clusters on the horizontal axis with bubble width again showing the total estimated employment in the groupings. This chart shows that the Mining, Oil and Gas Field Machinery; Machine Shop; and Valves, Compressors and Pumps sub-clusters have grown extremely rapidly from 2000 to 2003. These three groups can legitimately be seen as a tightly related and integrated grouping for which policy development and cluster support may need to be custom-tailored. Based upon our interviews and research, QGI believes it possible that one reason for the loss of employment in the smaller Forging, Stamping, Heat Treating and Engraving group is that these functions are more and more being taken on by the larger Machine Shop group, however this hypothesis would need further study to be validated.

3.0 Manufacturing Sector Interviews and Focus Group

Following the initial quantitative analysis of the Statistics Canada data, and discussion with the project stakeholders on the preliminary findings from this analysis, the next stage of the EEDC Value Chain Mapping project required QGI Consulting to conduct interviews with leading firms in the target industry sector – Metal Products Manufacturing. The findings from these interviews were subsequently reviewed by a focus group of manufacturers to confirm and refine the findings.

3.1 Purpose

The purpose of these interviews was to validate the preliminary findings with respect to the size and composition of the sector and to obtain specific information from leading firms in the sector with respect to growth opportunities and constraints for Edmonton manufacturers.

3.2 Interview Process

The goal of the interview process was to obtain insight into the key issues that leading firms in the manufacturing sector in Edmonton believe will have the greatest effect on the sectors’ future success. Specifically the interview process was designed to obtain the following information:

- What are the firm’s primary products and markets and in which areas do they believe lie their greatest opportunities for growth?
- How does the firm currently collaborate with suppliers, customers, and peers or competitors?
- What does the firm believe are the primary barriers to increasing the level of value added manufacturing being done in the Edmonton region?
- What role might EEDC or other agencies play in improving the effectiveness of collaboration amongst Edmonton region manufacturers?

QGI Consulting worked with EEDC and IRAP stakeholders to develop a list of interview participants that would cover the broad range of firms currently active in the manufacturing sector in terms of size, sophistication and market presence. Together, QGI and the project stakeholders were able to coordinate interviews with the following companies:
In addition to the private sector firms listed above, QGI Consulting interviewed the following four representatives from support institutions in the public sector.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Organization</strong></th>
<th><strong>Respondent</strong></th>
<th><strong>Responsibility</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alberta Economic Development</td>
<td>David Giroux</td>
<td>Sr. Director Sector Development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alberta Economic Development</td>
<td>Brad Trefan</td>
<td>Sr. Director Strategic Manufacturing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alberta Economic Development</td>
<td>Paul Godfrey</td>
<td>Director, Industrial Machinery and Equipment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>University of Alberta</td>
<td>Simaan AbouRizk</td>
<td>NSERC/Alberta Construction Industry Research Professor in Construction Engineering and Management</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Both Brian Dumsday and Robert Moore of QGI Consulting conducted all the interviews - with the exception of the interviews with Messrs. Trefan and Godfrey of Alberta Economic Development – which were conducted by Robert Moore. Interview length ranged from 80 minutes to over 2 hours, depending on the
availability and interest of the respondents. Interview participants received a written request from EEDC to provide their support to the project prior to being contacted by QGI representatives. All interviews were conducted in the offices or on the premises of the respondents and in most cases the interviews included a tour of the firms premises and operations. A formal interview guide was used to structure the discussions and to collect interview information.4

3.3 Interview and Focus Group Findings

3.3.1 Industry Demographics

Validation of preliminary value chain map

Most companies interviewed accepted the structure of the value chain map as presented in the interview. In a few cases, changes were made to the initial map in recognition of the absence of a specific definition that matched the way the firm wished to be described. This change in emphasis was required because of the NAICS definition structure that does not seem to provide effective descriptive categories for businesses in the pressure vessel and heavy metal fabrication businesses.

Size and Ownership

Most of the firms interviewed in this study are representative of the manufacturing sector generally in Edmonton in that they are small to medium size enterprises with between 30 and 150 employees. While a few of the firms represent the local operations of large national or multinational companies (KBR and Cooper Cameron for example) these are exceptions. In addition to most being relatively small companies, 8 of the firms are privately owned and in many cases are either family owned and run businesses or are only recently being run by professional paid management after having been founded as family enterprises.

Current Markets and Customer Relationships

Most of the firms indicated that their business is currently primarily directed to supporting activities in oil and gas exploration, extraction or production. However, a number of firms also provide services or products to heavy construction, mining, power generation and forest products industries. Virtually none of the activities of the firms interviewed are related directly to consumer products industries. In addition, while a number of the firms are either considering or actively pursuing markets outside of Western Canada, a very high proportion of sales revenues are currently being received from customers in Western Canada, particularly from customers involved in the oil and gas business in the Western Canada Sedimentary Basin5.

While some of the firms were involved in longer-term relationships with clients, much of their business was generated by low volume specialized production runs. Contract provisions with clients tended to be very short term and often highly price competitive. While some of the firms produced their own proprietary products, even these firms generally relied on low volume custom fabrication work to support or supplement their revenue base.

In particular for the “job shop” business of custom fabrication, respondents indicated that personal relationships were crucial to attract and retain business. In fact, few of the firms interviewed had professional sales management with most business development being done through long-standing personal relationships between owner/proprietors and their clients.

4 A copy of the Interview Guide is attached as Appendix 1.
5 The Western Canada Sedimentary Basin is the term commonly used to describe the area in Manitoba, Saskatchewan, Alberta, BC and the Northwest Territory where the majority of Canada’s oil and gas exploration takes place. For further information on this region, a good source is the Alberta Geological Survey website at http://www.ags.gov.ab.ca/
**Critical Material Inputs**

The most important material inputs to these firms is steel plate and steel alloys. Most of this material is purchased through intermediaries (wholesalers) however two of the firms interviewed purchase directly from steel mills. Very little steel consumed by these firms originates from steel mills in Canada. Most of the product is produced in Europe or the Far East. Eastern Canadian steel mills were said to be uncompetitive on price, quality and particularly on delivery times. A number of firms commented that eastern steel producers had integrated their business with the automotive industry and were unresponsive to the needs of Edmonton manufacturers.

**Implications of Industry Demographics**

The size and ownership structure and history of these businesses has important implications for their growth potential. Innovation and experimentation are necessary for businesses to grow and remain competitive. Many of the companies in this sector in the Edmonton region are currently or were previously family-owned businesses. While many may be on solid financial footing with excellent current cash flow, these sorts of business are more likely to be risk averse compared to larger or more financially diversified firms when it comes to investing in business or product development. Also, given the short term nature of the contracts most firms have with their customers, the management of the majority of these firms will be very reluctant to invest capital in the facilities, materials and human resources that are required for a firm to move from custom fabrication to product design, manufacturing and marketing.

In addition, many of these businesses are active in supplying or supporting the upstream oil and gas industry and there is a strong collective memory of past collapses of activity in this industry, particularly following the introduction of the National Energy Program in the 1980’s. This shared history makes many of the managers and owners of these businesses reluctant to invest their current good fortune in uncertain future growth opportunities outside the sector.

The firms are also handicapped by the fact that they have little experience with professional strategic business development activities and indeed often have little interaction with their customers beyond responding to technical requests for short-term fabrication contracts. Their lack of market knowledge and insight inhibits their capability to understand the types of product or service innovations that might have commercial value to their customers, their markets and themselves.

There are some very important exceptions to this characterization of Edmonton’s metal products manufacturers. These few exceptional firms are in the small but vital minority. A key distinction that can be made with respect to firms in this sector is between those firms who develop and market proprietary products or components, and those who only provide fabrication or manufacturing services for original equipment manufacturers (OEM’s).

Wealth generation for the Edmonton region, and diversification of the Edmonton metal manufacturing cluster away from the Western Canadian oil and gas extraction industry can best be achieved by strategies that encourage the attraction and growth of firms engaged in proprietary products manufacturing. This issue will be discussed further in subsequent sections of this report.

### 3.32 Growth Opportunities Identified

As mentioned above, the primary markets for the products and services provided by Edmonton’s metal products manufacturers are the Western Canadian resource extraction industries. For the most part, the firms interviewed identified these sectors as being the source of their greatest potential growth as well. However, a number of the firms expressed a desire to diversify out of the Western Canada resource industries. **If a firm produced its own proprietary products it was much more likely to identify either a preference or an active strategy to diversify its markets.**

In a number of cases, this diversification was by geographic market, rather than by product or industry sector. For example, a number of firms who are currently providing metal fabrication and manufacturing
services in the mining and gas compression business indicated that they hope to expand their markets for these services outside of Canada. Multiple respondents mentioned a desire to expand into markets in the United States, Middle East, Asia, South America and Africa. In addition, one company expressed an interest in expanding their sales into specialized niche markets in NW Ontario and the Great Lakes states.

The respondents identified six specific growth opportunities in foreign markets, amounting to approximately $30 million per year in total additional sales. Where respondents were targeting foreign markets, their growth expectations were generally much higher than the expectations of those companies targeting growth opportunities domestically. In particular, where companies identified a need or desire to grow their businesses within the conventional oil and gas extraction industry in the Western Canada Sedimentary Basin, the firms generally recognized that growth here would likely be incremental and may have to come at the expense of incumbent competitors in those markets as overall economic activity in this market is not expected to grow substantially in the short term, and will likely shrink in the medium term.

In general, firms obtaining a high proportion of their business from custom machining in a “job shop” environment were more likely to identify current local Western Canadian markets as their target growth markets and firms producing proprietary products or customized heavy fabrication components were more likely to be willing to explore opportunities beyond the local markets.

It is important to note that exports of proprietary products and services outside the region are much more effective at generating wealth and spin off job creation within the region than growth that is targeted at market share within the local market. While some firms may improve their overall competitiveness and profitability by growing within the Western Canadian market, and may be more viable and stable firms in the long term, in the short term their effect on overall employment and wealth generation will be at best limited from a regional economic development perspective.

Exporting producers grow the economic pie for all stakeholders in the local economy. More efficient “job shops” may grab a tastier piece for themselves but they are unlikely to satisfy the economic appetites of future citizens and stakeholders.

Producers of proprietary products exported from the region can also contribute to the economic viability of local machine shops and custom fabricators who can provide contract manufacturing and specialized services to such manufacturers as their business expands. In fact, a well-trained and sophisticated machine shop industry is vital to the future expansion of metal products manufacturing.

As manufacturing grows, the proprietary product manufacturers will require the services of top-notch machine shops and these firms can in turn contribute to the management and production processes and sophistication of their contract shops. Examples of this type of collaborative contracting and development already exist in the region between certain leading upstream petroleum industry service and component providers and local Edmonton custom fabrication and manufacturing companies.

3.33 Barriers to Growth

The respondents identified the following barriers to growth, which are listed in the reverse order of perceived importance as determined in the interviews (i.e. listed from least to most important).

5. Transportation costs

While Edmonton’s obvious distance from markets outside of Western Canada was occasionally cited as a barrier to growth, most companies more realistically just accept that certain mass produced low value manufactured goods cannot be cost effectively produced in Edmonton and they redirect their energies towards high value specialized manufacturing that builds on their incumbent experience and expertise.

Some companies that do produce and market more generic products were not aware of the degree to which logistics costs might limit their market reach as they sell their products FOB Edmonton and do not have expertise or experience with logistics.
4. **Lack of specific skills and experience**

A number of firms who had some interest in expanding sales to foreign markets expressed frustration at the lack of experience with international trade processes such as customs, duties and export declarations and documentation.

A lack of experience in general management, marketing and customer service hinders and frustrates many companies who’ve had a more operationally focused past experience. These companies often lack the basic human resource management and planning skills necessary to create an innovative and customer focused organization.

3. **Lack of skilled machinists**

While some respondents indicated that this was a problem of absolute numerical shortage due to the limited number of qualified candidates being graduated from NAIT and SAIT, others suggested that it was also a problem of quality, as well as quantity of candidates.

Multiple respondents complained that more highly skilled students are actively streamed away from trades towards academic training at the expense of manufacturing industry. The firms argued that skilled machinists must have good math and problem solving skills and that not enough suitable candidates are entering these trades.

This was seen as a cultural problem due to the perceived low prestige awarded to these jobs in our society. It was recommended that this issue be addressed through a comprehensive education campaign involving industry and all levels of educational institutions to increase the desirability and prestige of skilled manufacturing trades.

2. **General Macroeconomic issues**

As would be expected, a number of significant macroeconomic and competitive issues were identified as barriers to or limits upon the future growth of the sector.

- **Steel industry issues**
  - Particularly the impact of Chinese demand upon supply and prices for steel
  - Stainless steel surcharges, duties and supply limitations
  - The inability or unwillingness of Eastern Canadian steel producers to be competitive in price, quality and delivery time.

- **Canadian dollar appreciation and fluctuation**
  - As most export sales are priced in US dollars the recent 25% increase in the value of the Canadian dollar has squeezed potential profit margins. At least one of the firms interviewed who are active in the US market engages in periodic hedging of US funds transactions to provide certainty with respect to future exchange rates. However, most firms either had insufficient foreign transaction volumes or they lacked the knowledge required to engage in foreign currency hedging strategies.

- **The presence of incumbent competitors and foreign resistance to accept new standards for processes and procedures were also cited as barriers to growth.**

- **Limited growth available in target markets**
  - As mentioned earlier, where companies were targeting market share growth within the upstream oil and gas industry in the Western Canada Sedimentary Basin, the lack of expected growth in this overall market, and the likelihood of price competition from existing competitors in that market were cited as barriers to growth.
1. **Lack of a Market Driven Culture**

As described earlier, the experience of many firms with the past volatility of the oil and gas industry has made firms reluctant to invest in product development, with most firms relying instead on their expertise as custom machinists, or ‘job shops’. Currently business levels are good and firms’ current business supporting the conventional oil and gas industry plus growing work associated with oilsands capital project development creates complacency about the need to look for new opportunities and new markets. Ironically, it is this robust economy that could fund innovation and diversification that is in part responsible for dulling most firms’ incentive to pursue innovative and entrepreneurial ventures.

Furthermore, the nature of their business relationships as described earlier, leads to lack of involvement with customers and markets due to short-term contracts and leads to the creation and persistence of operations-oriented business cultures. Also, the structure of many smaller privately and family-owned businesses leads to a high level of risk aversion and fear of innovation and change.

Without a motivating force to drive cultural change, growth opportunities will be limited for many of the smaller local manufacturers. Even in organizations where ownership and management recognize the need to create a more market and customer driven organization, middle management will be resistant if the benefits of change aren’t tangible and relatively short term.

This study can assist in providing a clear understanding of the systemic and historical reasons why these manufacturers have such operationally oriented focus rather than market oriented or strategic business focus. EEDC must ensure that the insights gained through this study of Edmonton's Metal Products Manufacturing sector do not lead to short term and optimistic but misguided strategies to attempt broad cultural change by attempting to create strategic marketers within every machine shop in the region.

We will propose a more targeted approach to what is clearly a significant issue and important limit on the growth of this industry in our region.

3.34 **Experience with Collaboration**

As has been emphasized throughout this report, collaboration between peers within an economic cluster is essential to stimulate the innovative behaviours that keep firms competitive. In addition, measuring the collaborative behaviour of firms with their suppliers and customers within the value chain framework is useful because it shows the degree to which firms have adopted a strategic and market driven business model. QGI spent considerable time during our interviews with Edmonton manufacturing firms exploring the firms’ experience with collaboration.

As mentioned above, even firms who recognized the importance of collaboration within their cluster or with their suppliers and customers indicated that many of their peers, and even their customers and suppliers were reluctant to engage in meaningful collaborative activities. This was particularly true for firms where the companies had tactical, short-term contract-oriented business relationships with their customers. Firms performing custom machining for customers in the oil and gas sector indicated that many of their customers were reluctant to enter into longer-term business relationships.

However, a reluctance or inability to effectively collaborate with peers, suppliers and customers was not universal and some excellent examples of effective collaboration were identified in the course of the study.

**Examples of Early Stage Collaboration**

Examples of active collaboration with customers and suppliers were quite rare. However, while most firms indicated that the practice is still uncommon in their industry, some firms have begun to restrict their suppliers to pre-qualified vendors who provide mutually negotiated fixed price and service contracts for their services. The development of these longer-term commercial relationships with suppliers encourages a more cooperative and committed relationship to develop between the firms.
For other firms, the recent hiring of full-time professional sales personnel is a step towards deepening the relationships between the machine shops and their clients. A few firms have embarked on formal company wide customer service and change management training with the goal of creating customer focused organizations.

However, firms engaging in genuine multi-level marketing and supported by strategic marketing management are extremely unusual within the Edmonton Metal Products Manufacturing sector.

**Successful Collaboration and Local Best Practices**

A number of examples of *non-competitive* collaboration between peer organizations do exist in the cluster in Edmonton. For example the Alberta pressure vessel manufacturers work cooperatively on both advocacy and policy issues as well as on cooperative processes in areas such as employee benefits administration.

Another frequently cited example of effective collaboration is the EEDC and Canadian Manufacturers and Exporters support for the LEAN manufacturing consortium, which has been formed in the Edmonton region. This program provides opportunities for Edmonton area companies to learn the principles of LEAN manufacturing both from each other, and from professional consultants who are experienced in the principles of LEAN manufacturing. LEAN manufacturing is an approach to designing and managing production processes that emphasizes minimal inventory and just-in-time delivery to improve efficiency. The LEAN philosophy also emphasizes the importance of customer pull instead of a production push planning systems and thereby reinforces the importance of customer and supplier collaboration in production planning. In this sense, the LEAN consortium can be seen as an important contributor to strategies that emphasize the importance of value chain collaboration, though this is not the primary goal of most LEAN initiatives.

In addition, the EEDC sponsored and facilitated Manufacturers’ Steering Committee was given high marks by the companies who are active in this group. The Manufacturers’ Steering Committee is a group of senior executives from manufacturing companies in the Edmonton region who meet approximately quarterly to examine issues of joint interest to the committee. The group was formed with the active support and continuing facilitation of EEDC and has established for itself a mandate of working to explore potential growth opportunities for the cluster and where appropriate pursuing specific cluster initiatives. The group has successfully developed networking relationships within the cluster, as well as beginning dialogue with support organizations and stakeholders in government, research and educational agencies.

Participants in this group attribute its success to a number factors including:

- Steering committee membership is deliberately not composed of direct competitors, but is instead made up of leading individuals from firms in complementary, or unrelated businesses.
- The informal nature of the organization and the avoidance of minutes, action items and advocacy responsibilities and expectations.
- The steering committee is viewed by its members as a place where senior executives in small to medium size organizations can talk candidly with peers in other companies about issues for which they have no internal “sounding boards” in their organizations. It is a support organization on critical business issues for executives who would other wise feel quite isolated in dealing with policy and strategy issues.
- The continuing and effective facilitation of the group by EEDC staff.

There are also examples of effective relationships between larger firms who are engaged in the manufacture of proprietary products, and firms who are providing contracted manufacturing services in the local area. One well established manufacturer and custom machine shop described how an Edmonton based international manufacturer of oilfield wellhead equipment had worked with the smaller company to improve their production, quality control and management processes to allow them to provide manufacturing capacity over the long-term of components of the larger firm’s products.
In addition, a well-known local Edmonton manufacturer of products used in the transportation and agricultural heavy equipment industry has worked over an extended period with individuals in the gas compression industry to modify their products to be used in this new market segment. This collaboration has required significant investment of risk capital by the Edmonton company and dedication of correspondingly significant management time and effort on behalf of the gas industry partner. This joint initiative is likely to result in strong business growth for the Edmonton firm if the joint product development activities result in commercialization of the new product.

**NSERC/Alberta Construction Industry Research Chair**

One particular example of best practices in collaboration that was identified by one of the interview participants is the Chairmanship by Professor Simaan AbouRizk of the University of Alberta Department of Civil Engineering, of the Natural Sciences and Engineering Research Council (NSERC) Construction Industry Research Chair. This position, which is held by Prof. AbouRizk, was established through a partnership between NSERC, a consortium of construction companies and supporting institutions, and the University of Alberta. The goals of this program include establishing research programs of relevance to the construction industry, enhancing the overall quality of construction engineering education at the University of Alberta, and the transfer of research and technology to industry.6

Of interest to this study of the Edmonton manufacturing sector is that Prof. AbouRizk's industry partners include a number of firms who are direct competitors and yet this collaborative effort continues to engage its industry members who remain dedicated to the on-going initiative. That the initiative is viewed as an example of best practices in industry collaboration amongst competing firms makes it an obvious candidate for study to determine if it can provide a model for the development of a new vehicle to improve collaboration within Edmonton’s Metal Products Manufacturing sector.

Robert Moore and Brian Dumsday interviewed Prof. AbouRizk to learn more about this program, and to gain insights as to why this collaborative effort has been so successful.

In addition to the Chair of the program, a research team including programmers, industry liaison, and graduate students in Engineering assist the Chair holder. The program maintains strong ties with the construction industry and is guided by a management committee and a technical committee formed from these industrial collaborators. The research program is conducted in accordance with a research agreement that was developed, reviewed, and ratified by the Chair Advisory Board and the Industry Liaison Office at the University of Alberta.

All intellectual property developed through the program is owned by the University of Alberta. Generally, actively involved companies are entitled to royalty-free use of all inventions and developments with which they were involved. Other members are entitled to use these inventions for reduced royalties. In addition, the agreement provides non-disclosure clauses to protect the companies involved.

The program, under Prof. AbouRizk’s leadership, has resulted in a number of specific products of benefit to the construction industry including: technology transfer programs of immediate benefit to the collaborating companies.

For example, the program selected for research and development the process of project estimation in construction. The result of this research and collaboration was the development and release of project estimation software, known as ‘Simphony’. In addition to this software the program has resulted in the development of maintenance management software, project life-cycle cost analysis systems, various templates for project estimation and simulation, and the research has spawned over 30 research publications in refereed academic journals. The direct commercial value of the available software and business analysis tools would be conservatively estimated in the many millions of dollars.

---

6 Further information about the program is available on the program website at http://irc.construction.ualberta.ca/html/index.html
In discussion with Prof. AbouRizk, he identified the following factors that he believed were crucial to the success of the initiative:

- Prof. AbouRizk met with over 40 potential participating industry partners and chose only those who were natural collaborators to participate in the initial launch of the program. These firms were not necessarily the largest or most technologically sophisticated – they were companies with organizational cultures and leadership that were open to collaboration.

- Individual representatives from Industry must have the authority, influence and technological literacy (expertise) to be effective and active collaborators.

- The nature of the research program is intentionally directed towards areas that while not directly targeting any firms most strategic and sensitive areas of proprietary capability, are of direct commercial value to the participants and create a relationship of mutual value between the academic research group and the industry partners.

- The research does not replace work that can be or is being done within any of the individual companies.

- All active collaborators have access to all intellectual property.

Prof. AbouRizk has great latitude to direct the activities of this program and he has the leadership abilities to use this latitude judiciously and effectively. The role of Prof. AbouRizk in the success of the program should not be understated. However, the structure of the program may serve as a useful model for the creation of a similar program directed to the needs and benefits of Edmonton’s Metal Products Manufacturing sector.

### 3.35 Role of EEDC and other agencies

The interview and focus group participants had a wide variety of views on the appropriate role for agencies like EEDC. While a few participants thought it appropriate that EEDC limit its role to promotion of the region and advocacy support for the region to senior governments on macroeconomic issues, this was not the majority view. In addition, the greater the individuals experience with EEDC initiatives such as the Manufacturers’ Steering Committee or the EEDC and CME supported LEAN consortium, the more likely they were to see an expanded role for EEDC.

**Networking and Facilitation**

As mentioned above, the role of EEDC in supporting the LEAN manufacturing consortium and in its facilitation of the Edmonton Manufacturing Steering Committee obtained high marks from numerous interview participants. Most firms heartily recommended that this sort of cooperative approach with the CME and with other agencies such as Alberta Economic Development be continued.

Beyond these two initiatives there was general support for the idea that EEDC continue to support both formal and informal mechanisms to encourage productive collaboration and create educational opportunities for Edmonton manufacturers.

**Be a one stop shop for Edmonton Manufacturers**

Interview participants frequently mentioned a desire for EEDC to serve as a one-stop shop for other agencies and governments programs in support of educational and business development opportunities for manufacturers. Many recipients expressed frustration with their difficulty just learning what specific programs might be available to support their training and marketing objectives.

**Support for International Marketing**

Some firms specifically identified a desire for EEDC to support the international marketing objectives and desires of their firms both through direct support for their firms trade efforts (trade show funding and support, joint trade missions) and through continuing the current EEDC initiatives to promote the Edmonton region in domestic and foreign markets.
**Raise profile of Trades Training**

As mentioned earlier in the report, many firms identified the need for EEDC to work with industry and all levels of educational institutions to increase the desirability and prestige of skilled manufacturing trades. This initiative would hopefully raise the profile of manufacturing amongst potential entrants to the industry and increase the skill levels of new machinists.

**Industry Attraction**

The role of EEDC in industry attraction efforts was controversial amongst the interview participants. Some firms were leery of EEDC’s activism in this area, as they feared that EEDC might simply attract large international competitors to the region who would drive their companies out of business.

However, some firms recognized that it might be useful to explore whether licensing arrangements could be developed with foreign producers of process machinery such as that used in the forest and pulp and paper industries. This would allow local shops to service and repair machinery and components manufactured in Europe and may lead to sub-contracting of manufacturing of components of systems in the future.

**Macroeconomic/Tax issues**

Finally, EEDC and more senior agencies and levels of government were seen as playing a strong role in ensuring that the macroeconomic environment was made more conducive to growth of manufacturing. In general, participants identified the need for EEDC and others to continually benchmark our region against others to ensure that our policy and regulatory environments remain supportive of innovation and risk investment through the adjustment of tax and fiscal policies that keep Alberta manufacturers competitive with those in other jurisdictions. Specifically, multiple participants mentioned the need for accelerated write-offs of capital investments.

4.0 **Recommendations**

4.1 **Support for Cluster Growth**

The very concept of government support for economic cluster initiatives is still questioned by some who believe that success or failure of a region’s firms is best left entirely to private sector competitive forces. However, over the last decade or so a growing body of evidence has arisen suggesting that, economic clusters which are supported by well funded and effectively facilitated cluster organizations that promote collaboration and innovation, contribute greatly to regional economic growth and enhance the competitiveness of the regional cluster.

As recommended by the interview and focus group participants, QGI agrees that EEDC should continue its support for existing cluster initiatives and should consider how the priorities identified by the study participants might receive enhanced support.

This study suggests that the greatest opportunities for growth of the Metal Products Manufacturing sector reside with those companies that have invested in the development and marketing of proprietary products. Most of these companies are currently directly involved in serving the oil and gas industry in North America however some already have significant presence in international markets and others have plans or aspirations to expand outside the country. However, many of the participants in the Metal Products Manufacturing sector have neither the capability nor aspirations to be directly involved in export markets.

QGI Consulting recommends that EEDC and its economic development partners pursue two different strategies to support the different types of firms within this sector.

---

7 A landmark study in global experience with economic cluster initiatives (CI’s) is The Cluster Initiative Greenbook, by Solve, Lindqvist, and Ketels, 2003. This study involved a wide ranging survey of over 250 CI’s worldwide and resulted in the creation of the Cluster Initiative Performance Model which provides a framework for assessing CI’s to evaluate how and why they may succeed or fail.
4.11 Efficiency Oriented Strategies

For the majority of firms in this sector, the continued pursuit of activities intended to foster collaboration in areas of business process improvement, general management skills and capabilities and public policy advocacy are appropriate and necessary. Therefore, EEDC involvement with partner institutions and organizations in initiatives like LEAN manufacturing, and the facilitation of the Manufacturers Steering Committee should continue.

These initiatives will help to increase the culture of collaboration and innovation amongst the participating firms and will support the ongoing development of management capability and effectiveness of the participating small and medium sized enterprises.

In addition, EEDC should, as requested by a number of the firms interviewed, continue to work with industry partners and educational institutions to raise the profile and status of manufacturing trades in order to recruit more qualified individuals into the industry.

However, while necessary, strategies to increase collaboration and innovation in the areas of business process improvement and business efficiency do not by themselves create an improved willingness or capability for firms to expand their capabilities in the areas of product development and commercialization. A different approach will be required to support growth in these vital areas.

4.12 Business Innovation and Growth – a new mechanism for collaboration

As stated at the beginning of this report, focusing on strategies to encourage collaboration within key economic clusters is important because it encourages the innovative and competitive behaviours that improve the sector’s competitiveness. This competitiveness is particularly important for firms who sell products or provide services to markets outside the regional economy as these firms increase the overall wealth of the region.

Within the Metal Products Manufacturing sector, QGI recommends that EEDC develop new mechanisms and new partnerships focused particularly on its exporting producers of proprietary products and services. These collaboration and innovation mechanisms would be distinct from those currently being pursued, which we have broadly termed ‘efficiency oriented strategies.’

QGI recommends that EEDC partner with other agencies and departments in the provincial and federal governments, and with the University of Alberta to develop a new forum for innovation and collaboration in the Metal Products Manufacturing sector. Such a model could be based in part upon the existing NSERC/Alberta Construction Industry Research Chair but QGI recommends that government and industry stakeholders be brought together in facilitated discussions to examine what would work best for Alberta and specifically for Edmonton manufacturers. It is our view that one of the options that should receive serious consideration is the creation of a new Centre for Manufacturing Innovation and Growth, within the business school of the University of Alberta. As Edmonton region manufacturers and other stakeholders have identified a lack of strategic management and marketing capability as a key barrier to future development, such a centre could coordinate multiple initiatives in this area and serve as the nexus of collaboration for Alberta and particularly for Edmonton region manufacturers. In order to be successful, such a centre would need to be established with a strong continuing involvement from industry as well as be consistent with and supportive of initiatives and strategies of other key educational and government institutions.

4.2 Cluster Advocacy: Engage Civic and Senior Governments

As part of this initiative, QGI believes that EEDC needs to take an active role in creating a favourable policy environment amongst government decision makers in the city, provincial and federal governments. Most individuals involved in the sector do not believe that our senior political leaders appreciate the current or potential value of the manufacturing sector in Alberta, as has been demonstrated in this study. However, QGI Consulting met with representatives from Alberta Economic Development (AED) as part of this study.
and our discussions suggest that at the policy development level within the provincial government, the overall strengths, weaknesses and opportunities inherent in the Metal Products Manufacturing sector are well appreciated by AED at the Director and Senior Director levels. If EEDC could create momentum for support of this sector at the Minister and Deputy Minister levels, initiatives to create new collaborative mechanisms in the manufacturing sector would resonate strongly at the program development levels of AED.

Recently, the Alberta Government published “Securing Tomorrow’s Prosperity” a strategic policy framework, which was co-signed by the Premier and the Minister of Economic Development. The document identifies four strategic directions for the Alberta economy for the next 20 years:

- Enhance Alberta’s Current Competitive Advantages
- Build Alberta’s Innovation System
- Grow and Strengthen Small and Medium Enterprises (SME’s)
- Focus on Priority Value-Added Sectors

Within this strategy document are a number of the same observations and conclusions regarding the strengths and weaknesses of Alberta manufacturing that have been identified in this study. In particular the document recognizes the need to increase management/leadership capacity within SME’s. It also explicitly identifies the need to create a new culture of innovation that “enhances cooperation, collaboration and convergence.” This policy framework represents an excellent opportunity for EEDC to align its strategy for supporting this sector with a strategic provincial government policy initiative.

Following the election of a new Mayor in Edmonton and with the recent conclusion of the provincial election in Alberta and the subsequent appointment of a new Cabinet with many changes at the deputy minister level, timing is especially ripe for EEDC to undertake new initiatives to increase political awareness of the value of the Metal Products Manufacturing sector. Time is of the essence however as the new City and provincial governments will be planning their political programs under a new electoral mandate no later than the beginning of the New Year.

The information available from this study on the value and growth of the Metal Products Manufacturing sector can assist EEDC in their communication with political and bureaucratic leadership in the civic and provincial governments to obtain support and funding for initiatives designed to support the growth of this vital engine of economic prosperity.

5.0 Conclusion

Edmonton’s manufacturing sector and particularly its Metal Products Manufacturing cluster are critical to Edmonton’s current economic prosperity. The findings and strategies examined in this report suggest that the future growth of this cluster will require new strategies that enhance collaboration and increase the strategic planning vision and capabilities of local firms. That EEDC has commissioned this study and that Edmonton manufacturing companies have participated so enthusiastically in the interviews and focus group suggests that the local climate exists to capitalize on this energy and enthusiasm to engage a broader group of regional manufacturers in new initiatives to continue the growth and expansion that has brought such prosperity to our region.

Finally, QGI Consulting hopes that the methodology developed for the examination of the Manufacturing Cluster will be of use to EEDC and other agencies in improving their understanding of the structure, behaviour and development of other cluster groups.

---

Appendix 1. Interview Guide

Provide an introduction and overview of the findings from the study so far.

Confirm respondent’s time availability (60 minutes preferred)
Explain purpose of the project
Briefly review demographic data
Value chain map and concentration

A. Does the respondent agree with the basic value chain structure provided?

Yes __
No __

If ‘No’, what changes or errors are identified?

_____________________________________________________________________
_____________________________________________________________________
_____________________________________________________________________
_____________________________________________________________________

B. Where does the respondent believe that they fit on the value chain map?

Primary manufacturing
Component manufacturing
Machinery manufacturing
Supporting industry

Other: (specify) __________________________________________________________

Comments:
_____________________________________________________________________
_____________________________________________________________________
_____________________________________________________________________
_____________________________________________________________________
_____________________________________________________________________
_____________________________________________________________________

25
C. Critical Inputs

What does the respondent think are the critical non-labour or financial inputs to his/her business.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material/Component Inputs</th>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Is Source local?</th>
<th>Does local source exist Y/N</th>
<th>Why local source not used</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sample probing questions:

- Does the location of your firm depend upon the location of your input sources and if so why? (Logistics concerns, history, integration?)

- If local suppliers exist, but aren't used, what might they do in order to become your suppliers?
## D. Primary Products and Markets

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>% Sales Alberta</th>
<th>% Sales other Canada</th>
<th>% Sales USA</th>
<th>% Sales other International</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sample probing questions:

- What are your primary products and markets?
- In which of those markets do you see the greatest potential for growth over the next several years?
E. In what ways, if any, does the respondent collaborate with their suppliers, peers/competitors, customers in areas such as:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Product Development</th>
<th>Business Planning</th>
<th>Marketing Market Development Sales</th>
<th>Advocacy / Government Relations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Suppliers local</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suppliers other</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peers / Competitors local</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peers / Competitors other</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customers Alberta</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customers other</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sample probing questions:

- Tell us about the ways in which you work cooperatively with your suppliers, customers and competitors or peers, on issues of common interest?
- Are your relationships formal or informal? Are they project or “deal” oriented or are they ongoing?
- In which areas of collaboration have you enjoyed great success, with suppliers, customers and peers, and why?
- In which areas has collaborative effort not been tried, or has not worked out and why?
F. Thinking about the growth opportunities that we discussed in question D above what do you think should be done to increase the amount of value-added manufacturing being done in the Edmonton region?

________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________

Note which of the following are mentioned by the respondent and if not mentioned probe to determine if they are considered important.

- Improving local sources of supply
- Attracting new local sources of supply
- Improving access to intermediate (local) or final markets (how?)
- Collaborative marketing or business development
G. What are the most important barriers to increasing the level of value-added manufacturing being done in the Edmonton region?

________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________

H. What role might EEDC, or other agencies or organizations play in improving the effectiveness of collaboration amongst local Edmonton region manufacturers and their suppliers?

- Provide formal facilitation for business development
- Provide staff, meeting locations
- Lead development/dissemination
- Improve infrastructure (specifically?)
- Industrial attraction efforts to strengthen local value chains
- Stay out of the way

________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
### Appendix 2. List of Companies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cluster Group Description</th>
<th>Company Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Steel and Metal Product Supply                     | AltaSteel Ltd  
|                                                    | Alberta Custom Pipe Bending & Mfg. Ltd.                                     |
|                                                    | Grant Prideco Canada                                                        |
|                                                    | American Brass & Aluminum Foundry Ltd.                                      |
|                                                    | Childers Products Company Limited                                           |
|                                                    | Metal Supermarkets                                                          |
|                                                    | Quality Steel Foundries Ltd                                                 |
|                                                    | Hunt Manufacturing Ltd                                                      |
|                                                    | Ironco Iron Works Ltd                                                       |
|                                                    | Metal Fabricators And Welding Ltd.                                          |
|                                                    | Cours Metal Profiles                                                       |
|                                                    | Alberta Plastic Bumper Ltd.                                                 |
|                                                    | All Brite Metal Finishing Ltd.                                              |
|                                                    | Alpine Chrome Industries Ltd.                                               |
|                                                    | Brimstone Furnace Works Ltd                                                 |
|                                                    | Canadian Custom Engravers Ltd                                               |
|                                                    | Canadian Galvanizing                                                        |
|                                                    | Edmonton Electroplating Ltd                                                 |
|                                                    | Fairmont Electroplating                                                     |
|                                                    | Flo's Engraving                                                             |
|                                                    | Inotec Coating and Hydraulics Inc                                           |
|                                                    | Micro Industries (Alberta) Ltd.                                             |
|                                                    | Shaw Pipe Protection Limited                                                |
|                                                    | Supreme Plating (1983) Ltd.                                                 |
|                                                    | Thermex Metal Treating Ltd                                                  |
|                                                    | Western Hardchrome Plating Co. Ltd.                                         |
|                                                    | Western Mobile Equipment Refinishing                                        |
|                                                    | Metal-Span Rollforming Corp                                                 |
| Forging, Stamping, Coating, Engraving, Heat Treating| Almac Metal Industries Ltd.                                                |
|                                                    | Alta Fab Structure Ltd.                                                     |
|                                                    | Brytex Building Systems Inc                                                |
|                                                    | Dell Erectors Ltd.                                                          |
|                                                    | Robertson Building Systems                                                 |
|                                                    | Camsteel Fabricators (Alberta) Ltd.                                         |
|                                                    | Collins Industries                                                          |
|                                                    | Fabco Metal Products Ltd                                                    |
|                                                    | G T Metal Products Ltd                                                      |
|                                                    | Gem Steel Edmonton Ltd                                                      |
|                                                    | Imperial Steel Fabricating Ltd                                              |
|                                                    | Norfab Mfg Inc.                                                             |
|                                                    | Northern Weldarc Ltd.                                                       |
|                                                    | Nor-West Metal Craft Ltd                                                    |
|                                                    | Premier Steel (1990) Inc.                                                  |
| Prefabricated Metal Components and Plate Work       | Quality Fabricating & Supply                                                |
|                                                    | Almac Metal Industries Ltd.                                                |
|                                                    | Alta Fab Structure Ltd.                                                     |
|                                                    | Brytex Building Systems Inc                                                |
|                                                    | Dell Erectors Ltd.                                                          |
|                                                    | Robertson Building Systems                                                 |
|                                                    | Camsteel Fabricators (Alberta) Ltd.                                         |
|                                                    | Collins Industries                                                          |
|                                                    | Fabco Metal Products Ltd                                                    |
|                                                    | G T Metal Products Ltd                                                      |
|                                                    | Gem Steel Edmonton Ltd                                                      |
|                                                    | Imperial Steel Fabricating Ltd                                              |
|                                                    | Norfab Mfg Inc.                                                             |
|                                                    | Northern Weldarc Ltd.                                                       |
|                                                    | Nor-West Metal Craft Ltd                                                    |
|                                                    | Premier Steel (1990) Inc.                                                  |
|                                                    | Quality Fabricating & Supply                                                |
Rampart Steel Ltd.
Scott Steel Ltd.
Supreme Steel Ltd
Supreme Steel Ltd - Bridge Division
Waiward Steel Fabricators Ltd
A B B Combustion Services
Altex Heat Exchanger Ltd
Edmonton Exchanger & Manufacturing Ltd
Noralta Metal Fabricators Inc
Factotum Steel Industries Inc.
ZCL Composites Inc.
Penfabco Oilfield Equipment Sales & Service Ltd
Crown Cork & Seal Canada Inc.
Affordable Industries
Alberta Rewind & Pump Services Ltd
Alfab-Metals Ltd.
Antrim Industries Inc.
Apex Machine & Manufacturing Ltd.
Apollo Machine & Welding
Armor Machine & Manufacturing Ltd.
Atomic Machine Shop Inc.
Boreal Machine Inc
BSL Machine Ltd
C N C Industries Ltd.
C R C Wellhead Supply Ltd
C S M Compressor Supplies & Machine Works Ltd
Canak Industries Inc
Domino Machine Co. Ltd.
Fieldco Manufacturing Inc.
Gambit Products Ltd.
Grubisa Millwright Services Ltd.
Headhunters Diesel Ltd
I M Industries
Industrial Machine Shop Ltd.
Inspira Manufacturing Inc
J & H Machine Tools Ltd.
L P M Machines Ltd
McKinney Machine Company Ltd.
Norsearch Industries (1986) Ltd.
Oxford Machine & Welding Ltd.
Pat's Driveline
Precimax Mfg Ltd
Production Die-Makers & Machine
Reinhold Industries Ltd.
Texflo Machining Limited
UMW Valve
Universe Machine Corporation
Uniwest Machining Ltd.
Weldangrind Ltd.

Boiler, Pressure Vessels Tanks and Containers

Machine Shops
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Companies</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pumps, Compressor and Valve Manufacturing</td>
<td>Driesser Value, Halliburton Group Canada Inc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Alberta Compressor Valve Co. Ltd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dover Corporation (Canada) Ltd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Eagle Pump &amp; Compressors Ltd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flexxaire Manufacturing Inc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sulzer Bingham Pumps Inc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Weatherford Canada Limited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gledhill Steel Products Ltd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hi Kalibre Equipment Ltd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Invicta Valve Mfg Inc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Roda Deaco Valve Ltd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miscellaneous Fabricated Metal Product Manufacturing</td>
<td>Halbar Stainless Products Ltd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stinger Fabrication &amp; Welding Ltd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Great Canadian Mint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fero Corporation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stamco Specialty Tool &amp; Mfg Co (1979) Ltd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Strathcona Manufacturing Inc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Raylin Manufacturers &amp; Distributors Ltd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All Other Industrial Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td>Jenric Millwork</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Finning Limited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Peacock Inc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spartan Controls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hoisting Ltd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Imac Design Group Limited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cessco Fabrication and Engineering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Complete Package Technology Ltd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Diversified Steel Products Manufacturing Ltd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unisorb Canada Ltd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bloemhof Inc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stanfos Inc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Alberta Precision Tool Mfg Ltd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L J Welding &amp; Machine Services Ltd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mpb Lasertech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T C G Pipe Services Ltd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Black Cat Blades Ltd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Valley Blades Limited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mining and Oil and Gas Field Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td>Almac Machine Works Ltd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Weldco-Beales MFG. Alberta Ltd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ABB Vetco Gray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stream-Flo Industries Ltd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hyduke Energy Svc. Inc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Argus Machine Co. Ltd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Canturn Machine Co. Ltd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cooper Cameron Canada Ltd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Larsen &amp; D'Amico Mfg Ltd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Master Flo Valve Inc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Top-Co Industries Limited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tri-Service Oilfield Manufacturing Ltd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vector Oil Tool Ltd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Walters Oil Tool Machine Ltd</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix F: Weldco/Industry Endowment Agreement
STATEMENT OF TRUST

Donor Information

Weldco-Beales Manufacturing Inc.
Doug Schindel
12155 – 154 Street
Edmonton, AB T5V 1J3
Phone: 780-453-5306
E-mail: schindel@weldco-beales.com

The Endowment is designated to the:

Weldco-Beales/Industry Endowment in support of Welding and Joining Initiatives

Earnings may be used at the discretion of the Dean of Engineering in support of initiatives undertaken in the Alberta Centre for Welding and Joining.

In the event that future circumstances render the continuation of the aforementioned activity impractical or undesirable, the University may use the principal or income for such other purposes as will, in its opinion, honour, as nearly as practical, the original intent of the donor.

The Endowment will be administered by the University in accordance with the Post-Secondary Learning Act, the Endowment Management Policy, the Statement of Operating Principles and Spending Policy and the Endowment Investment Policy.

Copies of these policies and guidelines are available upon request or they can be viewed at http://www.finance.ualberta.ca/endowments.

Receipt of fund and acceptance of conditions acknowledged by the University as Trustee

Dated this 31 day of January 2006

Per: ____________________________
Signature - Vice President (External Relations)

SANDRA COOK
Printed Name

Per: ____________________________
Signature - Director, Financial Services
D. BARSZCZEWESKI
Printed Name

Developed in consultation with the University's legal counsel
GIFT AGREEMENT BETWEEN

WELDCO-BEALES MANUFACTURING INC.
(“the Donor”)

AND

THE UNIVERSITY OF ALBERTA
(“the University”)

I. THE GIFT

Weldco-Beales Manufacturing Inc. has generously pledged a gift of $750,000 to the Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering in the Faculty of Engineering at the University of Alberta. This pledge will be fulfilled over a period of 10 years, beginning in 2006.

Annual gifts of $75,000 will be made by Weldco-Beales Manufacturing Inc. to the University of Alberta every December 15 from 2006 through to December 15, 2015.

Pledge reminders will be provided by the University one month in advance of the payment due date.

II. PURPOSE

The purpose of the gift is to establish the Weldco-Beales/Industry Endowment in Support of Welding and Joining at the University of Alberta. This investment by Weldco-Beales Manufacturing Inc. of $75,000 per year over ten years will be leveraged through matching funds, additional industry contributions, and endowment yield to establish the Alberta Centre for Welding and Joining at the University of Alberta.

III. RECOGNITION

The Faculty of Engineering will establish the Weldco-Beales/Industry Chair in Welding and Joining as the cornerstone of the Alberta Centre for Welding and Joining. This endowed chair will exist in perpetuity and will carry the Weldco-Beales name for generations into the future. In addition to making the Weldco-Beales name prominent within the name of the Centre, the University will continue to recognize Weldco-Beales Manufacturing in its donor publications as appropriate (“The UofA Engineer”- Engineering alumni magazine, “New Trail” - UofA alumni magazine, etc.).
A major recognition event will publicly acknowledge Weldco-Beales support for the Alberta Centre for Welding and Joining and the appointment of the Weldco-Beales/Industry Chair in Welding and Joining.

A representative of Weldco-Beales will be invited to sit on the selection committee as an industry representative when the initial Weldco-Beales/Industry Chair in Welding and Joining is to be selected.

III. ACCOUNTABILITY

The University will report annually to the Donor on the status of the gift and the centre’s activities.

V. OTHER

Both Weldco-Beales Manufacturing Inc. and the University affirm that this gift does not and shall not, in any way, compromise the University Mission and Vision Statement, constrain academic freedom on campus, contravene any policy of the University, or reflect negatively on the University’s public image.

The focus of the academic priorities at University of Alberta may shift over time, and it may become impossible, inadvisable or impracticable to apply the gift for the purpose set out above. If the University is of the opinion that a revised purpose is appropriate, the University shall exercise its discretion, in consultation with Weldco-Beales Manufacturing, and use the gift to the best advantage of the University for other purposes consonant with the spirit and intent of the Donor’s gift.

Doug Schindel
President, Weldco-Beales Manufacturing Inc.

Dr. David T. Lynch, P.Eng.
Dean, Faculty of Engineering
University of Alberta

Date

DEC 15/06
### Governance Executive Summary

**Action Item**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agenda Title</th>
<th>Centre for Healthy Schools (C4HS)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Motion

**THAT** the GFC Academic Planning Committee, acting with delegated authority from General Faculties Council, approve the establishment of the Centre for Healthy Schools (C4HS) as an academic centre at the University of Alberta.

### Item

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action Requested</th>
<th>☒ Approval  ☐ Recommendation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposed by</td>
<td>Jennifer Tupper, Dean, Faculty of Education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presenter(s)</td>
<td>Lynn McGarvey, Vice Dean, Faculty of Education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Doug Gleddie, Associate Professor, Faculty of Education</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Details

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Responsibility</th>
<th>Faculty of Education</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Purpose of the Proposal is <em>(please be specific)</em></td>
<td>The proposal is before the committee for approval after being approved by the Centres and Institutes Committee.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Executive Summary *(outline the specific item – and remember your audience)* | • The mission of the C4HS is to serve the public good as a community of researchers, students and partners who play a critical and collaborative role in supporting, creating and researching healthy schools – “K-PhD”. Our research and practice in Alberta, Canada and beyond encompass comprehensive school health, health and physical education curriculum and pedagogy, health and physical literacy, mental health, physical and health education teacher education, school-based physical activity, faculty/institutional wellness and health promoting universities.  
• We encourage and advocate for excellence across the above areas in the following ways: innovative and collaborative research; multifaceted dissemination and knowledge mobilization strategies; professional development and education; leadership and advocacy; effective networks for collaboration.  
• The C4HS seeks to become an important connection space for those outside of the Faculty (e.g. Agriculture, Life and Environmental Science; Kinesiology, Sport and Recreation; School of Public Health) who seek to work collaboratively with educators and schools in the above areas.  
• The Faculty of Education will have administrative and financial responsibility for the Centre, and assumes associated financial risks. As the Centre grows, revenue will be generated through research grants, professional development and event hosting. The Centre, in collaboration with the Faculty’s Assistant Dean, Advancement, will also pursue private fundraising from individuals and corporations. |
| Supplementary Notes and context | <This section is for use by University Governance only to outline governance process.> |
Engagement and Routing (Include meeting dates)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Consultation and Stakeholder Participation (parties who have seen the proposal and in what capacity)</th>
<th>Those who are actively participating:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Faculty of Education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;For information on the protocol see the Governance Resources section Student Participation Protocol&gt;</td>
<td>Those who have been consulted:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Chairs of the Healthy University Strategic Plan Committee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Dean of Kinesiology, Sport and Recreation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Precision Health Signature Area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Director, Centre for Healthy Communities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Those who have been informed:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Chair, Health Science Council</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Dean, School of Public Health</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Approval Route (Governance) (including meeting dates)

| Centres and Institutes Committee (July 2019) Academic Planning Committee (October 23, 2019) |

Strategic Alignment

Alignment with For the Public Good

The C4HS will welcome and encourage diversity as we include ALL in the development of healthy communities. Our work will be innovative and transformational in both teaching and learning - resulting in successful, healthy citizens. The C4HS will seek out excellence and foster a culture of distinction in research, education and service. We will be outward facing and place a priority on community engagement and action. The C4HS views health as an elemental factor that is critical to the sustenance of self, community, work, play and environment. Specifically, the Centre can contribute to Objective 19: Prioritize and sustain student, faculty, and staff health, wellness, and safety by delivering proactive, relevant, responsive, and accessible services and initiatives. As well, the Centre aligns with the proposed Healthy University Strategic Plan which is based on the four goals of Health Promoting Universities: 1) Fostering healthy working, learning and living environments for students, faculty and staff, 2) Embedding health in all aspects of teaching, research and knowledge exchange, 3) Contributing to the health of the wider community and, 4) Evaluate, build evidence of effectiveness and share learning.

Alignment with Institutional Risk Indicator

Please note below the specific institutional risk(s) this proposal is addressing.

- Enrolment Management
- Faculty and Staff
- Funding and Resource Management
- IT Services, Software and Hardware
- Leadership and Change
- Physical Infrastructure
- Relationship with Stakeholders
- Reputation
- Research Enterprise
- Safety
- Student Success

Legislative Compliance and jurisdiction

Post-secondary Learning Act
GFC Academic Planning Committee terms of reference
Centres & Institutes Policy and Establishment Procedure

1. Attachment 1 (Proposal for the establishment of C4HS)
2. Attachment 2 (Letter of support – Chairs, Healthy University Strategic Plan Steering Committee)
3. Attachment 3 (Letter of support – Dean, Faculty of Kinesiology, Sport and Recreation)
4. Attachment 4 (Letter of support – Associate Dean, Research, Faculty of Education)
5. Attachment 5 (Letter of support – Assistant Dean, Advancement, Faculty of Education)
6. Attachment 6 (Letter of support – Executive Director & CEO, Physical and Health Education Canada)
7. Attachment 7 (Letter of support – Dean, Faculty of Education)

Prepared by: Doug Gleddie, Associate Professor, dgleddie@ualberta.ca


### University of Alberta Template for Proposals to Establish New Academic Centres and Institutes

Proposers will complete and submit this template to the Office of the Provost for approval in accordance with UAPPOL Policy. This template may be used in two ways:

1. **As a cover document attached to a completed proposal which has already been approved by the University for submission for external funding.** In this case, the template must present the academic arguments for establishing an academic centre or institute, and provide required information that is absent from the original proposal.

2. **As an expandable template to be completed.** In this case, the completed template may be up to 8 to 10 pages in length (not including letters of support or other appendices relevant to the proposal).

Before developing a proposal and completing this template, please contact the Office of the Provost to discuss the scope of the proposed initiative and to discuss steps for review under the UAPPOL Centres and Institutes Policy, as well as associated procedures for academic centres and institutes – [www.uappol.ualberta.ca](http://www.uappol.ualberta.ca).

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. Faculty Dean Signature</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Signature:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jennifer LeBlanc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date: 09/13/19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2. Name of the Proposed Centre or Institute</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Centre for Healthy Schools (C4HS)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3. Academic Justification for Establishment of a Centre or Institute</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Define the vision and purpose of the proposed unit:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VISION:</strong> Through research, education and action, the Centre for Healthy Schools will heighten awareness and understanding of issues and opportunities surrounding health and wellness in the K to PhD education system and contribute to the collective development of a healthy, active society.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MISSION:</strong> The Centre for Healthy Schools serves the public good as a community of researchers, students and partners who play a critical and collaborative role in supporting, creating and researching healthy schools. Our research and practice in Alberta, Canada and beyond encompass comprehensive school health, health and physical education curriculum and pedagogy, health and physical literacy, mental health, physical and health education teacher education, school-based physical activity, faculty/ institutional wellness and health promoting universities. We encourage and advocate for excellence across these areas in the following ways:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Innovative and collaborative research</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Multi-faceted dissemination and knowledge mobilization strategies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Professional development and education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Leadership and advocacy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Effective networks for collaboration</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Demonstrate that the proposed Centre/Institute does not duplicate other efforts at the University**

Although the University of Alberta currently has a number of other units and faculty members working with schools and research in the broad area of healthy schools (e.g. Kinesiology, Sport and Recreation; School of Public Health and; Agriculture, Life and Environmental Science) there is no
other dedicated centre for healthy schools on the University of Alberta campus. The Centre for Healthy Schools can become an important connection space for those outside of the Faculty who seek to work collaboratively with educators and schools.

Specifically, the Centre would engage in sustainable dialogue with *The School of Public Health* (SPH - Centre for Healthy Communities) and the emergent *Precision Health Signature Area* to align, synergize and amplify connecting work with schools as appropriate. The mission of the Centre for Healthy Communities (SPH) is to: *To promote thriving, healthy communities across Alberta and Canada through multi-sectoral collaboration, cross-disciplinary engaged research and capacity building, and by contributing to evidence-informed policies and practices. The Precision Health signature area is an emerging healthcare model that leverages data, new technologies, and the study of factors such as genomics, metabolomics, nutrition and environment, to better understand and address diseases and disabilities. Given the complementary nature of these three units, the Centre for Healthy Schools would seek to engage in regular communication and sharing as we seek potential areas of collaboration.*

At present, there is also nothing like the Centre provincially or nationally. The opportunity for a Centre to promote health from ‘K-PhD’ encompasses the broad idea of school and health and includes health promoting schools, universities and societies.

*Document the emerging or established excellence of the group of faculty involved, and describe how the proposed Centre or Institute will position the University of Alberta as a national and international leader.*

Our founding members (Drs Gleddie, Sulz and Morrison) have over 40 years of collective experience working in this field. Together, we bring the following established and emerging areas of excellence:

**Impact in the Field**
- Funding - $1,588,918
- Refereed Publications - 41
- Non-refereed Publications - 27
- Books - 3
- Book Chapters - 4
- Manuscripts in Preparation - 23
- Academic Presentations: 44 International & 43 National
- Keynotes and Invited Presentations - 76
- Student Involvement: 1 Mitacs Elevate PDF; 5 PhD students; 2 MEd Thesis students; a Health & Physical Education MEd (course-based) Cohort (24 students in 2018; 2020 recruitment underway); undergraduate student research (Roger Smith Awards, various student research projects)

**Memberships and Affiliations:**
- Institutional Membership in the *Association Internationale des Écoles Supérieures d’Éducation Physique* (AIESEP): International Conference (2021) Co-Chair and Committee
- Members of Physical and Health Education Canada and the Research Council
  - Physical & Health Education Canada President-Elect (2019-2022)
  - Research Council Chair (2019-2020)
  - Board Member (2013-2015)
  - National Conference Co-Chair (2015)
  - Chair of the Health Promoting Schools Program Advisory Committee (2008-2012)
- Healthy Schools Alberta (formerly Active Healthy Kids Canada)
o Chair (2018-present)
○ Board members (2018 - present)
   • Alberta Teacher Educators of Health and Physical Education
   ○ Chair (2016-18, 2013-2015)
   ○ Members

Building on the foundation and reputation shared above, the Centre for Healthy Schools will establish itself as a National leader through:

- Ongoing involvement with National organizations, conferences and collaborations
- Publishing research in respected National academic and professional journals
- Establishing an online and social media presence as a ‘go to’ source for healthy school praxis

Further, to position the University of Alberta and the Centre as International leaders in healthy schools we will:

- Host international events such as the 2021 AIESEP International Scientific Conference in Banff, Alberta (June 9-12)
- Initiate project collaboration with International colleagues and Institutions
- Publish research in respected International academic and professional journals

4. Provide a statement of the priority of the proposed centre or institute within the overall priorities of the Faculty and/or the University of Alberta. Include a statement of benefits the University of Alberta could expect to receive through creation of the proposed centre or institute, including benefits to students.

The priorities of the C4HS align with the following Strategic Priorities and Objectives of the Faculty of Education:

TRANSFORMATIVE TEACHING, LEARNING and LEADING: Our programs will prepare our graduates to excel as critical, thoughtful and ethical professionals and citizens who work in and contribute to increasingly complex and diverse contexts locally, regionally, nationally and internationally.

The C4HS will work with faculty members and students at all levels to ensure health is integrated and foundational to the education experience in the Faculty. We will provide support and leadership to develop a sense of community and belonging for all who work and play in the Faculty. We will provide professional development opportunities to enhance both teaching and learning. Teaching Quality Standard Competency 4 includes, “(d) being aware of and facilitating responses to the emotional and mental health needs of students;”. A focus on health literacy encompasses mental health as part of whole child health and education and will assist our graduates in this area personally and in their teaching.

KNOWLEDGE CREATION, MOBILIZATION & ENGAGEMENT: We will support and foster high quality, ethical, mutually beneficial, innovative and impactful research, scholarship and creative activity that informs disciplines, professional practice, shapes policy, engages communities and contributes to the public good.

The C4HS will both create and mobilize knowledge through innovative and collaborative research projects; student engagement in research and dissemination; academic and professional publications; social media presence and direct connections with the community. We will seek funding from a variety of sources that benefit the Faculty, University and most importantly, the public. Our Centre will be a place for collaboration with the field to address critical issues in the broad area of healthy schools.
RESPECTFUL RELATIONS, HEALTH & WELL-BEING: We will create and support a safe, healthy, welcoming and affirming community within the Faculty of Education that is accessible, respectful, reflective of diversity and inclusive.

The C4HS will contribute to the creation and support of a healthy community within the Faculty to benefit students, staff and faculty. Through interdisciplinary research and dissemination, teaching, event coordination and professional development we will assist students in developing the knowledge, skills and understanding they need to be healthy - for self and others.

The priorities of the C4HS also align with the University of Alberta's Strategic Plan: For the Public Good:

BUILD a diverse, inclusive community of exceptional students, faculty, and staff from Alberta, Canada, and the world.
EXPERIENCE diverse and rewarding learning opportunities that inspire us, nurture our talents, expand our knowledge and skills, and enable our success.
EXCEL as individuals, and together, sustain a culture that fosters and champions distinction and distinctiveness in teaching, learning, research, and service.
ENGAGE communities across our campuses, city and region, province, nation, and the world to create reciprocal, mutually beneficial learning experiences, research projects, partnerships, and collaborations.
SUSTAIN our people, our work, and the environment by attracting and stewarding the resources we need to deliver excellence to the benefit of all.

The C4HS will welcome and encourage diversity as we include ALL in the development of healthy communities. Our work will be innovative and transformational in both teaching and learning - resulting in successful, healthy citizens. The C4HS will seek out excellence and foster a culture of distinction in research, education and service. We will be outward facing and place a priority on community engagement and action. The C4HS views health as an elemental factor that is critical to the sustenance of self, community, work, play and environment. Specifically, the Centre can contribute to Objective 19: Prioritize and sustain student, faculty, and staff health, wellness, and safety by delivering proactive, relevant, responsive, and accessible services and initiatives. As well, the Centre aligns with the proposed Healthy University Strategic Plan which is based on the four goals of Health Promoting Universities: 1) Fostering healthy working, learning and living environments for students, faculty and staff, 2) Embedding health in all aspects of teaching, research and knowledge exchange, 3) Contributing to the health of the wider community and, 4) Evaluate, build evidence of effectiveness and share learning.

The University of Alberta will benefit from the Centre for Healthy Schools in the following ways:

Benefits to the University of Alberta as an Institution:
- Enhanced reputation as a leader and major contributor to the field of healthy schools
- Elevated national and international profile as a major research centre for the study of healthy schools; enhanced opportunities for national and international partnerships
- Improved inter-faculty engagement and inter-disciplinary interactions
- Development of a collaborative, interdisciplinary process for arriving at common goals and understandings with respect to healthy schools in the Faculty of Education and the University of Alberta
- Conduct research into the most effective and appropriate practices relating to health in postsecondary institutions, schools, and communities.
| Benefits to the University of Alberta through C4HS Community Partners: |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| • Access to outstanding resources and professional learning for healthy Faculties and Universities |
| • Enhanced access to school communities to share research evidence |
| • Increased networking and collaboration opportunities |
| • Leadership for professional development |
| • Improved connections to organizations (local to international) engaged in activities related to healthy schools, teacher education, and curriculum and pedagogy |
| • Opportunities for community partners to access space for learning and research resulting in a greater sense of connection to the University |
| Benefits for Faculty members (both within Education and without): |
| • A focus on the intersection of theory and practice in the fields of education and health |
| • Opportunities to engage in national and international exchanges regarding the study and practice of healthy schools |
| • Attractive opportunities for postdoctoral studies |
| • Enhanced opportunities for interdisciplinary interactions among those with interests in the field of healthy schools |
| • Interaction with diverse faculty members commonly connected by healthy schools |
| • Opportunities to interact, learn from and work with international academics and education practitioners |
| Benefits for Students: |
| • Students will have opportunities to learn about, practice and enhance health for self and others both on campus and in the community |
| • Undergraduate and graduate students will have opportunities to participate in projects related to healthy schools and will have access to resources to further their own work in this area |
| • Graduate students at both Masters and PhD levels interested in healthy schools will have a home and place of support to interact, collaborate and excel |
| • Opportunities to interact with faculty members and other students as partners |
| • Enhanced links with partners from the education community |
| • Ongoing exchanges and partnerships (e.g. summer programs) with other centers and institutions locally, nationally, and in other parts of the world |
| Benefits for the Community: |
| • Clear connections between research and practice |
| • Opportunities for collaboration and cooperation |
| • Increased access to research evidence |
| • Advocacy materials for healthy schools |
| • Support for resource and curriculum development |
| • Opportunities for formal and informal professional development and growth |

5. Provide a description of the proposed centre/institute governance structure/reporting lines. Include a diagram of organizational structure.
The Centre for Healthy Schools is an initiative of the University of Alberta, proposed and developed by the Faculty of Education. The Centre Director will report to and be accountable to the Dean of the Faculty of Education (or designate).

Administrative Structure:
- Dean of Education (designate)
- Director (Elect & Past)
- Program Coordinator (future position)
- Advisory Committee
- Research Associates
- Teacher Associates

The Centre will be managed by a Director in coordination with either a Director-Elect or a Past-Director (see below) who are full-time faculty members and who will be accountable to the Dean of the Faculty of Education. The Advisory Committee will advise (but not control) the policies and activities of the centre to ensure alignment with research, education and practice. The Director will oversee the overall operations of the centre and supervise the Program Coordinator who will be hired to carry out the day-to-day tasks associated with the Centre. The Director-Elect will support the Director on special projects and student engagement as they learn the workings of the Centre. The Past-Director will mentor the Director and take a primary leadership role for fund development and outreach. All three of these Director positions will form the Executive structure of the C4HS which is accountable to the Dean of Education (or designate).

Director Progression and Selection
- The founding Director will serve a two-year term and be directly accountable to the Dean (or designate)
- Before the end of the founding Director’s first year, a Director-Elect will be selected (see Faculty of Education process below) to serve alongside the Director during year two
- In year three, the Director-Elect will become the Director and the former Director will move to Past-Director in order to support the new Director in their first year
- Before the end of year three, a new Director-Elect will be selected to be mentored by the Director
- In this way, the term of Director lasts for 4 years (1 year as Elect, 2 years as Director and 1 year as Past) and there are always two people in leadership positions for both support and mentoring. The type of leadership progression described above is followed by both the provincial and national health and physical education bodies in this field and has been proven to be viable and sustainable.

*From the Faculty of Education Process, which also align with UAPPOL policies for recruitment and selection of centre directors* Prior to the end of the incumbent's term the Vice Dean will issue a call for interest to the academic Faculty members. A Selection Advisory Committee will be established to determine additional members and to guide the selection of a new Director (Elect). Following the end date for the call for interest, the Committee will meet to review the submissions and propose a
short list of candidates. Candidate submissions should include a current curriculum vitae and a cover letter. When the Selection Committee has reached a decision on the selection of a candidate, it will submit its recommendation to the Dean. If the Dean accepts the recommendation, the Dean will formally advise the candidate. In the event that the Dean is unable to accept the Committee’s recommendation, they can ask for an alternative recommendation from the short list or, if necessary, appoint an individual who was not included on the short list. Appointments of an individual not from the short list should normally be as Acting Director, until such time as a further selection process can take place.

Advisory Committee (Terms of Reference in Appendix A): responsibilities will be to provide guidance and direction to the Directors with respect to the Centre’s vision, mission, budget, and strategic plan. This is an advisory committee only and has no authority or control over Centre budget, activities, and structure. The Advisory Committee will meet twice a year and consists of:
- Up to three full-time (minimum of one) University of Alberta faculty members from the areas related to the work of the Centre
- A Graduate student representative
- An Undergraduate student representative
- Two members from community organizations

Research Associates: affiliated with and housed in the C4HS. The Research Associate responsibilities will be to:
- Participate in the advisement and general guidance on research issues related to the Centre’s activities
- Actively contribute to the research conducted by the Centre via seminars, position papers, collaborative research, and related tasks
- Could include scholars from within the Faculty or University, Post-doctoral Fellows or Visiting Scholars

Teacher Associates:
- Master teachers from the local community
- Affiliated with the Centre to support professional development, knowledge mobilization, student connections and school networking

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td><strong>Provide a statement of the role and qualifications of the centre/institute lead of the proposed centre or institute.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Director’s responsibilities will be to:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Provide leadership to the Centre in alignment with its goals and objectives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Coordinate the Centre’s activities with community partners</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Facilitate the development of research, education and service activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Promote the Centre within the University of Alberta community, provincially, nationally and globally as well as ensure that the centre’s goals are aligned with the priorities of the Faculty and the University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Pursue funding opportunities for research, education and community engagement</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Douglas L. Gleddie, PhD, is an Associate Professor in the Department of Elementary Education in the Faculty of Education at the University of Alberta. He teaches physical education curriculum and pedagogy to undergraduate students. He also teaches graduate courses in health and physical education, reflective practice, physical literacy, and research methods. Dr. Gleddie has won Faculty and University level teaching awards as well as National and Provincial awards for his work in health and physical education. His research foci include: narratives of physical education; school sport; physical literacy praxis; meaningful physical education and; teacher education. He has published numerous articles in academic and professional journals and co-authored three books including the
most recent – Healthy Schools, Healthy Futures. Dr. Gleddie’s career has included 10 years as a K-12 teacher, 6 years as the Director of the Ever Active Schools Program (a provincial healthy school organization) and 2.5 years as an Assistant Professor at MacEwan University. At the Department level, he has served as the Associate Chair (Graduate) for three years and is currently the Acting Vice-Dean and Associate Dean Academic for the Faculty. Dr. Gleddie is a graduate of Gold College (Cohort 10, 2018) and has engaged in extensive leadership development.

7. Employees
   a) Provide a statement of the employment status of employees (i.e., are they University of Alberta employees?)
   All employees will be University of Alberta Employees
   b) Specific source(s) of any “University funding” must be identified
   None at this time.
   c) Personnel expenditures must include adequate provisions for benefit costs, salary settlements, and other escalating factors.
Any expenditures (eventual) for University employees will include such provisions.

8. Financial Plan
   a) Include key sources of operating funds, and include revenue sources and expenditures for [ideally] 5 years projected.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Revenue</th>
<th>Expenditures</th>
<th>Rationale</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>$5,000</td>
<td>$4,000</td>
<td>Y1 will not include a course release for the director. Funds will come in from professional development (PD) and be expended for events, promotion and website development.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>$75,000</td>
<td>$20,000</td>
<td>Y2 includes a course release for the Director, GRA funds, social media and conference travel. Funds will come in through PD, keynotes and hosting the 2021 AIESEP Conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>$50,000</td>
<td>$80,000</td>
<td>Y3 includes a course release, hiring a program coordinator and GRA funds. Revenue will include PD, grants and contracts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>$65,000</td>
<td>$80,000</td>
<td>Y4 includes a course release, program coordinator and GRA funds. Revenue will include PD, grants, events and contracts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>$80,000</td>
<td>$80,000</td>
<td>Y5 includes a course release, program coordinator and GRA funds. Revenue will include PD, grants, events and contracts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>$275,000</td>
<td>$264,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTES – The Faculty of Education is currently in a process of centralizing Centre budget (1 over 1 signing authority) and human resources support with the Dean’s Office. As such, the Centre budget will be under the authority of the Dean. Key sources of revenue include: providing professional development to teachers/ school authorities on a fee-for-service basis (e.g. Teachers’ Convention sessions); hosting events such as forums or conferences (e.g. 2021 AIESEP Conference which is already booked); opportunities through our Faculty’s advancement office (see letter of support from Sean Mowat) and; other sources such as government grants and contracts.

b) State specific source(s) of any “University funding”
None at this time
c) Provide a plan for the sustainable funding of the operation of the centre or institute (salaries, equipment and maintenance, IT support (data management, web design, etc.)

The plan for funding for the Centre is to start small and manageable with a goal to build for a sustainable and productive future. The C4HS will also work closely with the newly established Professional Learning Unit in the Faculty to identify and maximize opportunities for revenue generation. See the above budget estimate and notes for details.

   d) Escalation factors must be built into expenditure projections (i.e. escalation due to inflation, future salary settlements, etc.)

See above budget estimate.

   e) If in-kind support is identified, the specifics of that support must be listed separately.

None at this time.

9. **Space Requirements.**

   Space required?  Yes ☐ No X

   If “No” selected, where is current space?
   Current space is located on the 2nd floor of the Education South Tower (the office and meeting space above the Education Gym).

   If “Yes” selected, complete the following:
   ☐ On-site at the University of Alberta
   ☐ Awaiting allocation
   ☐ Rent/lease required

   If rent/lease is required, has this been budgeted for?  Yes ☐ No ☒

   N/A

   Is funding required?  Yes ☐ No X  Reasons: The preferred space has recently been renovated and will not require work at this time.

   N/A

   Address the following questions:
   a) If rent/lease or license is required, what is the University of Alberta’s commitment?

   N/A

   b) If new space or modifications to existing space are required, has Facilities and Operations been contacted and has this been included in the budget?

   N/A

10. **Potential Risks to the University of Alberta**

    a) State any reputational, financial, and/or operational risks to the University of Alberta.

    Reputational risks are minimal as the founding faculty members have a well-founded, positive reputation in the Faculty, University and the community and can build on that status. Operational risks are also low as the Director will only have a course release if the funds are there and likewise, staff will only be hired if funds are available. There is a higher associated with the financial aspects of the Centre as there could be a possibility of running a deficit. To mitigate this risk, the Director will prepare detailed reports on budgeting expenses and future plans for Faculty as per policy.

    b) Outline plans to mitigate/manage those risks.

    Reputational: our structure (advisory committee, research associates, director progression, teacher associates) will assist in keeping the Centre’s reputation high and worthy of the University. Oversight by the Dean as well as support from the groups and positions named will help ensure the best quality research, education, dissemination and planning. Prior to engaging in any school-based PD on or off campus, the Director will consult w General Counsel and the Faculty’s Professional
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Learning Unit to ensure alignment with Faculty and University policies and procedures for risk management.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Operational &amp; Financial: see above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c) Risk Management Services may be consulted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As required.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11. **Annual Reporting and Strategic Review: In accordance with UAPPOL Policy**
   a) State a provision for annual reporting to the Reporting Dean
   As per the Faculty of Education policy, an annual report will be provided to the Vice-Dean. The report will include the vision and mission, objectives, projects, activities and people. The Centre will also provide an annual report to the Dean, stakeholders and community partners.
   b) State a provision for annual reporting to the Office of the Provost
   Faculty Centre reports will be shared with the Office of the Provost by the Vice-Dean each year according to UAPPOL policy.
   c) State a provision for strategic and operational review by the Reporting Dean (or delegate) at no less frequency than every five years.

The Faculty of Education schedules each Centre for 5-year Strategic Reviews according to Faculty and UAPPOL policy. The Vice-Dean initiates the review process with support from governance staff. Centre Directors submit a report (alignment to the Faculty strategic plan, members, recognition, budget, risk assessment, UofA strategic review report for Centres), feedback from Faculty members is solicited and a meeting is held to discuss the report and the feedback. Final documents are submitted to the Provost’s Office.

12. **Intellectual Property (IP) and Copyright**
   a) Will any copyright or patentable IP be created, and if so, how will it be handled?
   Copyrighted and/or patentable IP created will follow the UAPPOL Patent Policy.
   b) How will ownership and commercialization of IP be handled?
   Ownership and commercialization of created IP will follow the UAPPOL Patent Policy.

13. **Termination Plan/Provisions**
   a) Exigency plan for termination: If physical and/or financial resources will remain upon termination, a plan for consultation with donors or agencies associated with the centre or institute must be included in the dissolution plan.

Upon dissolution, physical and financial resources will revert to the Faculty of Education. All contracts and donor agreements will include this contingency. Any endowments that may be set up for long term funding will include an alternate purpose in the Statement of Trust, making it easier to potentially alter the use of the funds if the C4HS ceased to exist.

14. **Letters of Support:** Attach letters from relevant on- and off-campus sources
   - Dean, Faculty of Education – Dr. Jennifer Tupper
   - Associate Dean Research, Faculty of Education – Dr. Denise Larson
   - Assistant Dean Advancement, Faculty of Education – Sean Mowat
   - Dean, Kinesiology, Sport & Recreation – Dr. Kerry Mummery
   - Chairs – Healthy University Strategic Plan Committee – Dr. Andre Costopoulos (Dean of Students) & Wayne Patterson (Vice Provost & AVP – HR)
   - Executive Director and CEO, Physical and Health Education Canada - Melanie Davis

Provide, if applicable, any agreements and/or memoranda of understanding between the University of Alberta and its partner(s) to establish, fund and operate the proposed academic centre or institute.

N/A
Appendix A: Draft Advisory Committee Terms of Reference

1.0 Purpose:
To advise the Centre for Healthy Schools (C4HS) and thus, help achieve the mission of heightening awareness and understanding of issues and opportunities surrounding health and wellness in the K to PhD education system and contributing to the collective development of a healthy, active society.

2.0 Responsibilities
The Advisory Committee will:
- Advance the vision and mission of the Centre.
- Advise the members of the C4HS Executive on program development, needs identification and funding development.
- Be responsible for taking information to their representative organizations and providing feedback as necessary.
- Prioritize program funding.
- Form partnerships to support program work.

3.0 Membership:
The following categories will form the membership of the Advisory Committee:
- Up to three full-time (minimum of one) University of Alberta faculty members from the areas related to the work of the Centre
- A Graduate student representative (Faculty of Education)
- An Undergraduate student representative (Faculty of Education)
- Two members from community organizations related to the work of the Centre

4.0 Structure:
As the structure of this committee is advisory, recommendations will be provided to the Executive of the C4HS. The Advisory Committee has no decision making power.

5.0 Meetings:
The Advisory Committee will meet twice a year. Each member will inform the C4HS Director if they are unable to attend meetings. The Director will facilitate meeting times, locations and provide agendas. Informal meeting notes will be taken by a volunteer and shared electronically. Terms of reference will be reviewed as required by the Executive of the C4HS.

This version of the Terms of Reference has been established on September 12, 2019.
June 17, 2019

Centres and Institutes Committee
University of Alberta
Edmonton, AB

Re: Centre of Healthy Schools Proposal

As co-chairs of the University of Alberta Healthy University Strategic Plan (HUSP) Steering Committee, we are pleased to provide our support to the development of a Centre for Healthy Schools (C4HS). We recognize that integrating health into the culture of the university and for our students, faculty and staff is necessary for the success of the people who work, research, live, and learn at the UofA and for the success of the university as a whole. In “For the Public Good”, Objective 19 emphasizes the need to prioritize and sustain student, faculty and staff health, wellness and safety by delivering proactive, relevant, responsive and accessible services and initiatives. Embedding a health perspective in our day-to-day living requires commitment among our leadership to raise the profile of health within our community and the development of The Centre for Healthy Schools will actively demonstrate that commitment.

The HUSP outlined a number of ways to leverage existing strengths at the university and to create action that will benefit the health and well-being of the entire university community. Foundational to this plan was the Okanagan Charter: An International Charter for Health-Promoting Universities and Colleges, which calls for post-secondary institutions to “embed health into all aspects of campus culture, across the administration, operations and academic mandates, and to lead health promotion action and collaboration locally and globally.” By setting a clear vision, goal, strategic directions, and objectives, the HUSP was intended to set health as a key priority for the institution, to provide a mechanism for understanding all the health-related work already being done at the university, and to continually improve the university’s capacity to foster health for all.

By actively engaging a community of researchers, students and partners to heighten awareness and understanding of issues and opportunities regarding health and wellness within the entire education system, the Centre for Healthy Schools will uniquely align to the five strategic directions of the HUSP and will strengthen the University’s ability to create and support health within the University and education community. The Centre’s work will enhance our reputation as a leader in the study of integrated health and allow for collaboration within our research, teaching and learning environments, each of which will contribute to a healthier university.

We jointly agree to endorse the creating of this centre and we recommend that the members of the Centres’ and Institutes Committee support this proposal.

Sincerely,

Dr. Andre Costopoulos
Vice-Provost and Dean of Students

Wayne Patterson
Vice-Provost and Associate Vice-President (Human Resources)
June 13, 2019

Doug Gleddie, PhD  
Faculty of Education  
University of Alberta

RE: Support for the Centre for Healthy Schools

Dear Dr. Doug,

Thank you for providing me with the documentation supporting your application for approval of a Centre for Healthy Schools (C4HS) in the Faculty of Education. On behalf of the Faculty of Kinesiology, Sport, and Recreation I am pleased to provide a support for this initiative. A Centre focusing on the issues of child and adolescent health is both needed and timely.

I encourage you to continue to work with our Faculty members who work in the area of physical activity and health promotion. I see many opportunities for collaboration that will enhance the efforts of all involved.

Best wishes

Kerry Mummery, PhD FASMF  
Professor and Dean
June 12, 2019

Re: Letter of Support Centre Application: Centre for Healthy Schools (C4HS)

As Associate Dean Research in the Faculty of Education, I am pleased to offer strong support for the proposed Centre for Healthy Schools (C4HS). The importance of focusing on health and wellness in schools, and more broadly across educational contexts, is a recognized need from elementary school to post-secondary education. Within the past two years, both Federal and Provincial governments to have made specific calls to focus on and enhance student, teacher, and school leader health. The proposed Centre for Healthy Schools is a direct response to the need for applied research on effectively fostering healthy learning environments. Creation of the centre capitalizes on an exceptionally strong research team from the Faculty of Education with a specific strength in and focus on healthy schools. The intersectoral experience and extensive network this team possesses presents the perfect opportunity to leverage established professional and academic relationships, building upon this synergy to establish a centre of applied, collaborative research excellence. This is a unique and timely opportunity given that within Canada there currently exists no centre dedicated to school health, this despite the fact that school-based interventions are recognized as an effective and preferred focus for effective and expansive health impact.

This application for the C4HS aligns with and directly addresses several aspects of the Faculty of Education Strategic Plan (2019) - Education for the Public Good. Specifically, the proposed centre is dedicated to Transformative Teaching Learning and Leading (Strategic Priority 1) by championing and teaching about the integration of health and wellness philosophy and activities within the Faculty of Education. This includes professional learning opportunities that benefit students, faculty, and staff. The C2HS is committed to Knowledge Creation, Mobilization and Engagement (Strategic Priority 2) across sectors. Endemic to educational research is an intersectoral research commitment, i.e., working with and across sectoral boundaries from educational research institutions to schools to school districts to provincial teachers’ associations to provincial government ministries of education to federal funders of educational research. Knowledge mobilization is inherent in the educational research endeavour and very clearly built into the C2HS proposal. Respectful Relations, Health, and Well-being (Strategic Priority 4) is very clearly a fit with the proposed new center. Indeed, the centre is a direct response to this Faculty strategic priority.
This application to establish the Centre for Health Schools (C4HS) also closely aligns with the University Strategic Plan, For the Public Good.
Applied educational research required strong field connections and collaborations. The centre is committed to excellence in research, education, and service (EXCEL) with a strong focus on engagement with educational communities and collaborative action for healthy change (ENGAGE). At its heart, C2HS is focused on building healthy learners, teachers, leaders in the context of healthy learning communities (BUILD). Most specifically, the centre will offer a model of how prioritizing and sustaining student, faculty, and staff health, wellness, and safety (Objective 19) can be effectively operationalized and implemented through applied research excellence.

The C4HS will be a focus point for healthy schools based research, including both collaborations and funding opportunities. The faculty members, Gledde, Sulz, Morrison, submitting this application are a dynamic team of accomplished researchers each with an exceptionally strong research granting, publication, and knowledge mobilization record. They bring to the centre an expansive and outstanding network of academic and professional relationships. The applicants possess the relationships necessary to fully realize the intent of centres to foster creative research collaborations. As such the centre will begin from a point of strength with an established network of research-tested and research-ready relationships both within the university, (e.g., across Faculties such as the School of Public Health, the Faculty of Kinseology, Sport, and Recreation, and the Precision Health Signature Area), as well as intersectoral relationships, (e.g., Physical Health and Education Canada, and Ever Active Schools). The applicants submitting this proposal have a strong history of graduate student recruitment, graduate student awards, post-doctoral recruitment, and research supervision in the area of healthy schools. The launch of C4HS will only enhance the draw of strong graduate students both nationally and internationally to the Faculty of Education/University of Alberta. Once here, graduate students will benefit from exceptionally rich research learning opportunities focused on healthy educational environments while learning about applied research with commitments to intersectoral and trans-disciplinary work.

In closing, I am pleased to offer my strong support for this innovative application for a new centre, the Centre for Healthy Schools (C4HS).

Sincerely,

Denise Larsen, Ph.D., R. Psych.
Associate Dean Research, Faculty of Education
Professor, Counselling Psychology
Fellow, Canadian Psychological Association
May 28, 2019

Dr. Steven Dew  
Provost and Vice-President (Academic)  
2-40 South Academic Building (SAB)  
University of Alberta  
Edmonton, AB T6G 2G7

Re: Letter of Support for the Centre for Healthy Schools

Dear Dr. Steven Dew,

I’m providing this letter of support for the establishment of the Centre for Healthy Schools proposed by Drs Gleddie, Sulz and Morrison. I’m offering my support from an advancement and external relations perspective, although I fully recognize that the academic and societal benefits of this centre will be significant.

One of the three Campaign priorities for the Faculty of Education is mental health and well-being, as it has been identified by teachers, alumni, donors and the community as an area of critical importance and one that the Faculty is well recognized for its research and community outreach.

Health has been identified as one of the top 5 campaign themes and almost every faculty has one or more priorities under this umbrella. A Centre for Healthy Schools would augment the U of A’s already strong position in this realm, and provide added value to conversations with potential donors.

In my discussions with donors, many have identified health as their leading concern and they recognize that the earlier exercise and healthy choices are introduced from a participatory and educational perspective to individuals, the more likely healthy living will be a lifelong practice. Our donors also know how closely linked physical health is to an individual’s mental health. Being able to demonstrate our strength in both these areas significantly increases our stock in the eyes of our supporters.

Having a dedicated research and advocacy centre for healthy schools would add a critical piece of the health education and preventative medicine puzzle, and donors would support a centre committed to promoting health in children and adolescents.

Sincerely,

Sean Mowat  
Assistant Dean, Advancement
May 30th, 2019

To Whom It May Concern,

I would like to support the Faculty of Education’s proposal for a Centre for Healthy Schools going forward to the University of Alberta’s Office of the Provost.

PHE Canada is a national charitable association that champions healthy, active kids by promoting and advancing quality opportunities and healthy learning environments. Supporting community champions with quality programs, professional development services, and community activation and convening opportunities, PHE Canada helps children develop the knowledge, skills, and attitudes to be healthy and active for life. Our vision is one in which each and every young person in Canada lives a healthy, physically active life.

Our approach is rooted in a whole child, whole school, and whole community philosophy. As such, we support health equity, social development, and a comprehensive school health approach and socio-ecological approach.

I truly believe that a Centre for Healthy Schools at the University of Alberta can become an important connection space for researchers, students and partners across Canada who seek to work collaboratively to support healthy schools. It’s mission “to encourage and advocate for excellence” will benefit from the credibility and collective experience of the faculty members involved. Drs. Gleddie, Sulz and Morrison have been nationally recognized for their contributions to healthy schools and are uniquely placed to lead the first centre of this kind in Canada.

As a result, the Centre for Healthy Schools will be positioned to innovatively link to research, practice and back again. In this way, the latest pedagogical research, theories and approaches can be structured to reflect the realities faced by today’s educators and school staff. At present, there is also nothing like the Centre provincially or nationally.

I truly hope you will support their application,

Melanie Davis
Executive Director | Chief Executive Officer

Physical & Health Education Canada | Éducation physique et santé Canada
Tel/Tél: 613-523-1348 x 2330 | Fax/Téléc: 613-523-1206
melaniedavis@phecanada.ca | melaniedavis@eps-canada.ca
Date: June 11, 2019

To: Dr. Steven Dew  
Provost & Vice-President Academic

From: Dr. Jennifer Tupper,  
Dean, Faculty of Education

RE: Letter of Support for the Establishment of a Centre for Healthy Schools

The proposed Centre for Healthy Schools (C4HS) comes at a time when physical literacy, physical education, and wellness are front of mind for educators across the country. In the 2012 study “Seeking Wellness”, researchers noted the growing body of literature regarding the increasingly complex work of teachers and reported on, among other factors physical and mental health. More recently, the WellAhead initiative funded by the McConnell Foundation is seeking to improve child and youth mental health by integrating social and emotional wellbeing into K-12 classrooms. Along with mental health and wellness, physical health and wellness in education is a national focus given the importance of supporting students to realize their full potential as learners and as productive members of society.

The Centre for Health Schools (C4HS) will be the first of its kind in Canada, and is well positioned to advance health and wellness research and practice locally, nationally and internationally. The Faculty of Education is the ideal location for the Centre. Our strategic plan Education for the Public Good prioritizes transformative teaching, learning and leading and respectful relations, health and well-being. C4HS will enable the Faculty to more fully realize these goals through its inward and outward facing work. Further, we have very strong scholars and researchers in this area who will lead the Centre’s development, and who have well-established collaborations with partner organizations such as Ever Active Schools, the WellAhead Initiative, PHE Canada, and the Joint Consortium for School Health. The Centre will also be well positioned to support pre and in-service teachers in meeting the new Teacher Quality Standards (TQS), and in particular TQS #4 (d) Establishing Inclusive Learning Environments: being aware of and facilitating responses to the emotional and mental health needs of students. Finally, the Faculty of Education has a strong record of successful centres, and I have no doubt that the C4HS will be equally successful.

Dr. Doug Gleddie, Dr. Lauren Sulz, and Dr. Hayley Morrison along with colleagues across the Faculty and University are uniquely qualified to provide a hub of support for innovative and collaborative research, knowledge dissemination, professional development and education, leadership and advocacy, and broader networks for collaboration. Both Dr. Gleddie and Dr. Morrison were recent recipients of national awards through PHE Canada recognizing their outstanding research and service in physical education and physical literacy. Dr. Gleddie received the R. Tait MacKenzie Honour Award (PHE Canada’s most prestigious award), and Dr. Morrison received the Research Council Emerging Scholar Award. Dr. Sulz has established a strong SSHRC funded research program and will provide important leadership in the development of the Centre.

I am truly inspired by the work of these faculty members that has led to the development of this proposal, which is timely, urgent and important. This initiative has my full support.

Sincerely,

Jennifer Tupper  
Dean  
Faculty of Education
June 17, 2019

Centres and Institutes Committee
University of Alberta
Edmonton, AB

Re: Centre of Healthy Schools Proposal

As co-chairs of the University of Alberta Healthy University Strategic Plan (HUSP) Steering Committee, we are pleased to provide our support to the development of a Centre for Healthy Schools (C4HS). We recognize that integrating health into the culture of the university and for our students, faculty and staff is necessary for the success of the people who work, research, live, and learn at the UofA and for the success of the university as a whole. In “For the Public Good”, Objective 19 emphasizes the need to prioritize and sustain student, faculty and staff health, wellness and safety by delivering proactive, relevant, responsive and accessible services and initiatives. Embedding a health perspective in our day-to-day living requires commitment among our leadership to raise the profile of health within our community and the development of The Centre for Healthy Schools will actively demonstrate that commitment.

The HUSP outlined a number of ways to leverage existing strengths at the university and to create action that will benefit the health and well-being of the entire university community. Foundational to this plan was the Okanagan Charter: An International Charter for Health-Promoting Universities and Colleges, which calls for post-secondary institutions to “embed health into all aspects of campus culture, across the administration, operations and academic mandates, and to lead health promotion action and collaboration locally and globally.” By setting a clear vision, goal, strategic directions, and objectives, the HUSP was intended to set health as a key priority for the institution, to provide a mechanism for understanding all the health-related work already being done at the university, and to continually improve the university’s capacity to foster health for all.

By actively engaging a community of researchers, students and partners to heighten awareness and understanding of issues and opportunities regarding health and wellness within the entire education system, the Centre for Healthy Schools will uniquely align to the five strategic directions of the HUSP and will strengthen the University’s ability to create and support health within the University and education community. The Centre’s work will enhance our reputation as a leader in the study of integrated health and allow for collaboration within our research, teaching and learning environments, each of which will contribute to a healthier university.

We jointly agree to endorse the creating of this centre and we recommend that the members of the Centres’ and Institutes Committee support this proposal.

Sincerely,

Dr. Andre Costopoulos
Vice-Provost and Dean of Students

Wayne Patterson
Vice-Provost and Associate Vice-President (Human Resources)
June 13, 2019

Doug Gleddie, PhD
Faculty of Education
University of Alberta

RE: Support for the Centre for Healthy Schools

Dear Dr. Doug,

Thank you for providing me with the documentation supporting your application for approval of a Centre for Healthy Schools (C4HS) in the Faculty of Education. On behalf of the Faculty of Kinesiology, Sport, and Recreation I am pleased to provide a support for this initiative. A Centre focusing on the issues of child and adolescent health is both needed and timely.

I encourage you to continue to work with our Faculty members who work in the area of physical activity and health promotion. I see many opportunities for collaboration that will enhance the efforts of all involved.

Best wishes

Kerry Mummery, PhD FASMF
Professor and Dean
June 12, 2019

Re: Letter of Support Centre Application: Centre for Healthy Schools (C4HS)

As Associate Dean Research in the Faculty of Education, I am pleased to offer strong support for the proposed Centre for Healthy Schools (C4HS). The importance of focusing on health and wellness in schools, and more broadly across educational contexts, is a recognized need from elementary school to post-secondary education. Within the past two years, both Federal and Provincial governments to have made specific calls to focus on and enhance student, teacher, and school leader health. The proposed Centre for Healthy Schools is a direct response to the need for applied research on effectively fostering healthy learning environments. Creation of the centre capitalizes on an exceptionally strong research team from the Faculty of Education with a specific strength in and focus on healthy schools. The intersectoral experience and extensive network this team possesses presents the perfect opportunity to leverage established professional and academic relationships, building upon this synergy to establish a centre of applied, collaborative research excellence. This is a unique and timely opportunity given that within Canada there currently exists no centre dedicated to school health, this despite the fact that school-based interventions are recognized as an effective and preferred focus for effective and expansive health impact.

This application for the C4HS aligns with and directly addresses several aspects of the Faculty of Education Strategic Plan (2019) - Education for the Public Good. Specifically, the proposed centre is dedicated to Transformative Teaching Learning and Leading (Strategic Priority 1) by championing and teaching about the integration of health and wellness philosophy and activities within the Faculty of Education. This includes professional learning opportunities that benefit students, faculty, and staff. The C2HS is committed to Knowledge Creation, Mobilization and Engagement (Strategic Priority 2) across sectors. Endemic to educational research is an intersectoral research commitment, i.e., working with and across sectoral boundaries from educational research institutions to schools to school districts to provincial teachers’ associations to provincial government ministries of education to federal funders of educational research. Knowledge mobilization is inherent in the educational research endeavour and very clearly built into the C2HS proposal. Respectful Relations, Health, and Well-being (Strategic Priority 4) is very clearly a fit with the proposed new center. Indeed, the centre is a direct response to this Faculty strategic priority.

This application to establish the Centre for Health Schools (C4HS) also closely aligns with the University Strategic Plan, For the Public Good.
Applied educational research required strong field connections and collaborations. The centre is committed to excellence in research, education, and service (EXCEL) with a strong focus on engagement with educational communities and collaborative action for healthy change (ENGAGE). At its heart, C2HS is focused on building healthy learners, teachers, leaders in the context of healthy learning communities (BUILD). Most specifically, the centre will offer a model of how prioritizing and sustaining student, faculty, and staff health, wellness, and safety (Objective 19) can be effectively operationalized and implemented through applied research excellence.

The C4HS will be a focus point for healthy schools based research, including both collaborations and funding opportunities. The faculty members, Gleddie, Sulz, Morrison, submitting this application are a dynamic team of accomplished researchers each with an exceptionally strong research granting, publication, and knowledge mobilization record. They bring to the centre an expansive and outstanding network of academic and professional relationships. The applicants possess the relationships necessary to fully realize the intent of centres to foster creative research collaborations. As such the centre will begin from a point of strength with an established network of research-tested and research-ready relationships both within the university, (e.g., across Faculties such as the School of Public Health, the Faculty of Kinesiology, Sport, and Recreation, and the Precision Health Signature Area), as well as intersectoral relationships, (e.g., Physical Health and Education Canada, and Ever Active Schools). The applicants submitting this proposal have a strong history of graduate student recruitment, graduate student awards, post-doctoral recruitment, and research supervision in the area of healthy schools. The launch of C4HS will only enhance the draw of strong graduate students both nationally and internationally to the Faculty of Education/University of Alberta. Once here, graduate students will benefit from exceptionally rich research learning opportunities focused on healthy educational environments while learning about applied research with commitments to intersectoral and trans-disciplinary work.

In closing, I am pleased to offer my strong support for this innovative application for a new centre, the Centre for Healthy Schools (C4HS).

Sincerely,

[Signature]

Denise Larsen, Ph.D., R. Psych.
Associate Dean Research, Faculty of Education
Professor, Counselling Psychology
Fellow, Canadian Psychological Association
May 28, 2019

Dr. Steven Dew  
Provost and Vice-President (Academic)  
2-40 South Academic Building (SAB)  
University of Alberta  
Edmonton, AB T6G 2G7

Re: Letter of Support for the Centre for Healthy Schools

Dear Dr. Steven Dew,

I'm providing this letter of support for the establishment of the Centre for Healthy Schools proposed by Drs Gleddie, Sulz and Morrison. I'm offering my support from an advancement and external relations perspective, although I fully recognize that the academic and societal benefits of this centre will be significant.

One of the three Campaign priorities for the Faculty of Education is mental health and well-being, as it has been identified by teachers, alumni, donors and the community as an area of critical importance and one that the Faculty is well recognized for its research and community outreach.

Health has been identified as one of the top 5 campaign themes and almost every faculty has one or more priorities under this umbrella. A Centre for Healthy Schools would augment the U of A's already strong position in this realm, and provide added value to conversations with potential donors.

In my discussions with donors, many have identified health as their leading concern and they recognize that the earlier exercise and healthy choices are introduced from a participatory and educational perspective to individuals, the more likely healthy living will be a lifelong practice. Our donors also know how closely linked physical health is to an individual’s mental health. Being able to demonstrate our strength in both these areas significantly increases our stock in the eyes of our supporters.

Having a dedicated research and advocacy centre for healthy schools would add a critical piece of the health education and preventative medicine puzzle, and donors would support a centre committed to promoting health in children and adolescents.

Sincerely,

Sean Mowat  
Assistant Dean, Advancement
May 30th, 2019

To Whom It May Concern,

I would like to support the Faculty of Education’s proposal for a Centre for Healthy Schools going forward to the University of Alberta’s Office of the Provost.

PHE Canada is a national charitable association that champions healthy, active kids by promoting and advancing quality opportunities and healthy learning environments. Supporting community champions with quality programs, professional development services, and community activation and convening opportunities, PHE Canada helps children develop the knowledge, skills, and attitudes to be healthy and active for life. Our vision is one in which each and every young person in Canada lives a healthy, physically active life.

Our approach is rooted in a whole child, whole school, and whole community philosophy. As such, we support health equity, social development, and a comprehensive school health approach and socio-ecological approach.

I truly believe that a Centre for Healthy Schools at the University of Alberta can become an important connection space for researchers, students and partners across Canada who seek to work collaboratively to support healthy schools. It’s mission “to encourage and advocate for excellence” will benefit from the credibility and collective experience of the faculty members involved. Drs. Gleddie, Sulz and Morrison have been nationally recognized for their contributions to healthy schools and are uniquely placed to lead the first centre of this kind in Canada.

As a result, the Centre for Healthy Schools will be positioned to innovatively link to research, practice and back again. In this way, the latest pedagogical research, theories and approaches can be structured to reflect the realities faced by today’s educators and school staff. At present, there is also nothing like the Centre provincially or nationally.

I truly hope you will support their application,

Melanie Davis
Executive Director | Chief Executive Officer

Physical & Health Education Canada | Éducation physique et santé Canada
Tel/Tél : 613-523-1348 x 2330 | Fax/Téléc : 613-523-1206
melaniedavis@phecanada.ca | melaniedavis@eps-canada.ca
Date: June 11, 2019

To: Dr. Steven Dew  
Provost & Vice-President Academic

From: Dr. Jennifer Tupper,  
Dean, Faculty of Education

RE: Letter of Support for the Establishment of a Centre for Healthy Schools

The proposed Centre for Healthy Schools (C4HS) comes at a time when physical literacy, physical education, and wellness are front of mind for educators across the country. In the 2012 study “Seeking Wellness”, researchers noted the growing body of literature regarding the increasingly complex work of teachers and reported on, among other factors physical and mental health. More recently, the WellAhead initiative funded by the McConnell Foundation is seeking to improve child and youth mental health by integrating social and emotional wellbeing into K-12 classrooms. Along with mental health and wellness, physical health and wellness in education is a national focus given the importance of supporting students to realize their full potential as learners and as productive members of society.

The Centre for Health Schools (C4HS) will be the first of its kind in Canada, and is well positioned to advance health and wellness research and practice locally, nationally and internationally. The Faculty of Education is the ideal location for the Centre. Our strategic plan Education for the Public Good prioritizes transformative teaching, learning and leading and respectful relations, health and well-being. C4HS will enable the Faculty to more fully realize these goals through its inward and outward facing work. Further, we have very strong scholars and researchers in this area who will lead the Centre’s development, and who have well-established collaborations with partner organizations such as Ever Active Schools, the WellAhead Initiative, PHE Canada, and the Joint Consortium for School Health. The Centre will also be well positioned to support pre and in-service teachers in meeting the new Teacher Quality Standards (TQS), and in particular TQS #4 (d) Establishing Inclusive Learning Environments: being aware of and facilitating responses to the emotional and mental health needs of students. Finally, the Faculty of Education has a strong record of successful centres, and I have no doubt that the C4HS will be equally successful.

Dr. Doug Gleddie, Dr. Lauren Sulz, and Dr. Hayley Morrison along with colleagues across the Faculty and University are uniquely qualified to provide a hub of support for innovative and collaborative research, knowledge dissemination, professional development and education, leadership and advocacy, and broader networks for collaboration. Both Dr. Gleddie and Dr. Morrison were recent recipients of national awards through PHE Canada recognizing their outstanding research and service in physical education and physical literacy. Dr. Gleddie received the R. Tait MacKenzie Honour Award (PHE Canada's most prestigious award), and Dr. Morrison received the Research Council Emerging Scholar Award. Dr. Sulz has established a strong SSHRC funded research program and will provide important leadership in the development of the Centre.

I am truly inspired by the work of these faculty members that has led to the development of this proposal, which is timely, urgent and important. This initiative has my full support.

Sincerely,

[Signature]

Dr. Jennifer Tupper, Dean  
Faculty of Education
Governance Executive Summary

Item No. 7

Proposal for Joint Doctoral Degree Programs, University of Alberta (Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research) and four Indian Institutions of Technology (IIT): Roorke, Bombay, Kharagpur, and Madras, India

Motion

THAT the GFC Academic Planning Committee approve, with delegated authority from General Faculties Council, the Joint Doctoral Degree Programs between the Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research, University of Alberta and the following Indian Institutions of Technology (IIT), India, as set forth in Attachment 1, to take effect upon final approval

- Indian Institutions of Technology (IIT) - Roorkee
- Indian Institutions of Technology (IIT) - Bombay
- Indian Institutions of Technology (IIT) - Kharagpur
- Indian Institutions of Technology (IIT) - Madras

Item

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action Requested</th>
<th>☒ Approval</th>
<th>☐ Recommendation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposed by</td>
<td>Brooke Milne, Dean and Vice Provost, Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presenter(s)</td>
<td>Janice Causgrove-Dunn, Associate Dean, Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research Danielle Scott, Director of International Relations, University of Alberta International (UAI)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Details

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Responsibility</th>
<th>Provost and Vice-President (Academic)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Purpose of the Proposal is <em>(please be specific)</em></td>
<td>To strengthen our relationships with top Indian institutions that are of strategic interest and where we hope to have ongoing mobility. To build our profile as a leader in Canada-India academic relations. To attract the best Indian students to be part of UAlberta graduate programs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Executive Summary *(outline the specific item – and remember your audience)*

UALberta is a leader in Indo-Canadian academic relations, as noted most recently by the Indian High Commissioner to Canada during a visit to UAlberta in early Oct 2019 and previously by the Canadian High Commissioner to India in 2016.

The Indian Institutes of Technology (IITs) are home to an extremely select group of top students: fewer than 1.5% of applicants to undergraduate programs are admitted from close to 1 million applicants who take the entrance exam annually.

According to Web of Science, UAlberta currently has more joint publications than any other U15 university with IIT Bombay, IIT Kharagpur, and IIT Roorkee. This can be credited in part to the large number of academic staff at UAlberta with degrees from India (including many IIT alumni). The UAlberta Research Experience (UARE) program,
which has successfully brought over 175 undergraduate research interns from IIT Bombay and IIT Kharagpur to UAlberta since 2010, also demonstrates the interest of UAlberta professors in working with IIT students.

Developing joint doctoral degree programs with the top IITs will allow us to further advance and solidify UAlberta’s profile as the leader in Indo-Canadian academic relations; at the moment, no other Canadian institutions have entered into such agreements with the IITs. It will also help strengthen our ties with these elite institutions and attract top graduate students to UAlberta both through the program itself and indirectly by further building UAlberta’s brand in India through association with the IITs.

This is a strategically important initiative for UAlberta. Dr. Turpin hopes to sign the agreements and initiate the programs during his visit to India in November. To initiate the collaboration, the Provost’s Office and UAI have committed 3 years of funding to support the incoming IIT students (2/institution/year), with the host supervisor also needing to contribute.

Outgoing UAlberta students would have basic costs (accommodation and food) covered by the host IIT.

At UAlberta, the agreement is being made with the Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research. Participating faculties must first obtain their own faculty and Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research approvals. At UAlberta, the proposed initial participating Faculties are Agricultural, Life and Environmental Sciences (ALES); Engineering; Medicine and Dentistry; Public Health; and Science. Additional Faculties may be included by written agreement between the parties.

The UAlberta transcript notation will read: “Participating in a shared credential program offered jointly by this university and Indian Institute of Technology XXX.”

The UAlberta parchment notation will read “having completed all the statutory requirements of the program offered jointly by the University of Alberta and the [Full, formal name of other institution] has been granted the degree of [Official Degree Name] and awarded all the rights and privileges pertaining to this degree”.

| Supplementary Notes and context | See attached background document. |

**Engagement and Routing** (Include meeting dates)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Consultation and Stakeholder Participation (parties who have seen the proposal and in what capacity)</th>
<th>Those who are actively participating:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cen Huang, Vice Provost and Associate Vice-President (International)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Danielle Scott, Director (International Relations), UAI</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Item No. 7**

<For information on the protocol see the Governance Resources section Student Participation Protocol>

Those who have been consulted:
- Jason Carey, Associate Dean, Engineering
- Mark McDermott, Associate Dean, Grad, Science
- Hanne Ostergaard, Associate Dean, FoMD
- Vic Adamowicz, Vice Dean, ALES
- Shanthi Johnson, Dean SPH
- Amit Kumar, Professor, Engineering, and Interim Director, Engage India Association of Professors
- Janice Hurlburt and Maria Chia, Governance and Policy Coordinator, FGSR
- Bryan Hogeveen, Vice Dean, FGSR
- Brooke Milne, Dean, FGSR
- Tammy Hopper, Vice-Provost (Programs), Office of the Provost and Vice-President (Academic)
- Kate Peters, Portfolio Initiatives Manager, Office of the Provost and Vice-President (Academic)
- Darin McKinley, Legal Counsel, Office of General Counsel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Approval Route (Governance) (including meeting dates)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FGSR Council: October 16, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GFC Academic Planning Committee: October 23, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GFC Exec (for parchment only):</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Strategic Alignment

**Alignment with For the Public Good**
Please note the Institutional Strategic Plan objective(s)/strategies the proposal supports.

**Alignment with Institutional Risk Indicator**
Please note below the specific institutional risk(s) this proposal is addressing.

- Enrolment Management
- Faculty and Staff
- Funding and Resource Management
- IT Services, Software and Hardware
- Leadership and Change
- Physical Infrastructure
- Relationship with Stakeholders
  - Reputation
- Research Enterprise
- Safety
- Student Success

**Legislative Compliance and jurisdiction**
Post-Secondary Learning Act (PSLA)
GFC Academic Planning Committee (APC) Terms of Reference
GFC Academic Standards Committee (ASC) Terms of Reference
UAPPOL Shared Credentials Policy
UAPPOL Admissions Policy
UAPPOL Academic Standing Policy

Attachments (each to be numbered 1 - 3)
1. IIT UA Background for Joint Doctoral Proposals (page(s) 1 - 2)
2. IIT Roorkee - UA Joint Doctoral proposal (page(s) 1 - 9)
3. IIT Bombay-UA Joint Doctoral proposal (page(s) 1 - 9)
4. IIT Kharagpur -UA Joint Doctoral proposal (page(s) 1 - 12)
5. IIT Madras-UA Joint Doctoral proposal (page(s) 1 - 9)

Prepared by: Janice Hurlburt, Graduate Governance and Policy Coordinator, jhurlburt@ualberta.ca
Background on UAlberta-IIT Joint Graduate Program Agreements
Prepared by UAlberta International (UAI)
Oct. 8, 2019

Background on IITs:
- There are 23 Indian Institutes of Technology (IITs); 8 are older (established before 1962) and the rest are more recent; the proposed agreements are all with the older, well-established IITs (Bombay, Kharagpur, Madras, Roorkee).
- All the IITs are extremely competitive, with a very small number of seats available for a very select group of students: fewer than 1.5% of applicants to undergraduate programs are admitted (about 13,700 in 2019) from close to 1 million applicants who take the entrance exam annually.

Joint programs:
- The IITs we are working with are extremely sought after by top universities around the world.
- They already have joint graduate programs with various institutions.
  o Australian examples: the IIT Bombay – Monash Research Academy was established in 2008 and has hundreds of students participating in its joint PhD program. Also: University of Melbourne-India Postgraduate Academy with IIT Madras, IIT Kanpur, IIT Kharagpur; University of Queensland-IIT Delhi Academy of Research
  o Singaporean examples: IIT Bombay & National University of Singapore and Nanyang Technological University
  o Other examples: IIT Madras with RWTH Aachen (Germany) and Michigan State University
- According to the High Commission of Canada in India, our Canadian peers are also interested in developing joint programs but none is as far advanced as UAlberta.

UAlberta-India context:
- UAlberta is a leader in Indo-Canadian academic relations, as noted most recently by the Indian High Commissioner to Canada during a visit to UAlberta in early Oct 2019 and previously by the Canadian High Commissioner to India in 2016.
- According to Web of Science, UAlberta currently has more joint publications than any other U15 university with IIT Bombay, IIT Kharagpur, and IIT Roorkee.
  o This can be credited in part to the large number of academic staff at UAlberta with degrees from India (including many IIT alumni).
  o The UAlberta Research Experience (UARE) program, which has successfully brought over 175 undergraduate research interns from IIT Bombay and IIT Kharagpur to UAlberta since 2010, also demonstrates the interest of UAlberta professors in working with IIT students.
- In April this year, an Engage India Association of Professors was launched with an executive team of professors plus 35 members-at-large from across 9 faculties, bringing together researchers with an interest in collaborating with India. The joint degree programs will allow us to leverage the interest of these UAlberta professors and others who appreciate the excellent opportunity to work with the IITs.
Rationale:
- Developing joint doctoral degree programs with the top IITs will allow us to further advance and solidify UAlberta's profile as the leader in Indo-Canadian academic relations.
- It will also help to attract top graduate students to UAlberta both through the program itself and indirectly by further building UAlberta’s brand in India through association with the IITs.
- We will build our research connections with these elite institutions through the professors’ collaboration on joint projects and joint supervision of students.

Agreement negotiations:
- Dr. Cen Huang, Vice-Provost and Associate Vice-President (International), and Dr. Amit Kumar, Prof. of Mechanical Engineering and Interim President of Engage India, initiated discussions with the IITs during a mission to India earlier this year.
- Following that, UAI worked with FGSR, relevant Faculties (ALES, Engineering, FOMD, Public Health, Science), the Provost's Office, and the Office of General Counsel on drafts and is in the process of finalizing them with the 4 IITs.
- President Turpin is planning to visit India in early November to move forward relations with key institutions. It is hoped that the agreements can be signed then.
- UAI is also discussing possibilities for joint programs with Indian Institute of Science (Bangalore) and Indian Institute of Technology Delhi so agreements with those institutions, based on the same template, may come through governance in the future.

Operations:
- To initiate the collaboration, the Provost’s Office and UAI have committed 3 years of funding to support the incoming IIT students (2/institution/year), with the host professor also needing to contribute.
- Outgoing UAlberta students would have basic costs (accommodation and food) covered by the host IIT.
- We expect to increase the number of students participating in the future through funding from the Science and Engineering Research Board of India (SERB); in 2016, UAlberta was the first university worldwide to sign an agreement for visiting PhD students with SERB.
- The student mobility would build on existing collaborations; professors on each side would need to commit to a project in advance of a student applying.
- UAI would work together with FGSR and Faculties as needed to facilitate the process, but Faculties would be the ones assessing student applications, as with other shared credentials programs.
AGREEMENT FOR AJOINT DOCTORAL DEGREE PROGRAM

BETWEEN

INDIAN INSTITUTE OF TECHNOLOGY ROORKEE
Located in City, State/Province, Country
(“IITR”)

AND

THE GOVERNORS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF ALBERTA
As represented by the Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research
Located in Edmonton, Alberta, Canada
(“UAlberta”)

WHEREAS:

A. The parties to this Agreement have entered into a memorandum of understanding (“MoU”) that contemplates various forms of academic cooperation; and

B. The parties wish to formalize the terms for an Agreement under which doctoral students from either party may pursue a Joint Degree Program.

NOW THEREFORE in consideration of the above and other good and valuable consideration, the parties agree as follows:

1. DEFINITIONS

1.1. In this Agreement:

a. “Collaborating Institution” means the institution which is not the Joint Degree Student’s Home Institution.

b. “Joint Degree Program” means a program of study under which students may obtain a doctoral degree from UAlberta OR a doctoral degree from IITR.

- In each instance, the degree will be granted by the Home Institution, and the Home Institution will provide formal recognition of the completion of the Joint Degree Program through a notation on the transcript and on the parchment.

- At UAlberta, participating faculties must first obtain faculty and Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research approval. At UAlberta, the proposed initial participating Faculties are Agricultural, Life and Environmental Sciences (ALES); Engineering; Medicine and Dentistry; Public Health; and Science. Additional faculties may be included by written agreement between the parties.

c. “Joint Degree Student” means a student who is participating in the Joint Degree Program.

d. “Home Institution” means the institution where the student was originally admitted to a doctoral degree program in one of the degree programs contemplated by the Joint Degree Program.
2. **LIAISON OFFICERS**

2.1. Each party shall designate a liaison officer (“Liaison Officer”) who will be responsible for coordinating the specific aspects of the Joint Degree Program as well as advising and assisting students taking part in the Joint Degree Program.

2.2. The designated Liaison Officers for the Agreement are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>for IITR</th>
<th>for UAlberta – General Agreement Matters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Dr. Cen Huang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Position</td>
<td>Vice-Provost and Associate Vice-President (International)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full Mailing Address</td>
<td>University of Alberta International University of Alberta 142 Telus Centre Edmonton, Alberta T6G 2R3 Canada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Telephone:</td>
<td>Telephone: +1-780-492-0821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E-mail:</td>
<td>E-mail: <a href="mailto:cen.huang@ualberta.ca">cen.huang@ualberta.ca</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>for IITR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full Mailing Address</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.3. All notices sent pursuant to this Agreement must be sent to the above-mentioned Liaison Officers. The parties agree that either party may change its designated Liaison Officer by notifying the other party in writing of such change.

2.4. Any notice to be given by either party pursuant to this Agreement must be in writing and may be delivered by commercial courier, registered mail (unless a postal strike or other disruption is currently in place), facsimile machine, or e-mail to the relevant Liaison Officer using the contact information set out above (or such other contact information as notified by a party by written notice given in accordance with this clause).

2.5. If a party receives a message that a notice sent to an e-mail address is undeliverable, or that the Liaison Officer is out of the office, or if the party has any other reason to believe that the delivery of a notice was ineffective, then the party will send the notice using a different method.

3. **APPLICATION, SELECTION, AND ADMISSION OF STUDENTS FOR THE JOINT DEGREE PROGRAM**

3.1. A Joint Degree Student must first be admitted into a doctoral degree program at their Home Institution.

3.2. Collaborating professors from UAlberta and IITR will jointly identify research projects for Joint Degree Students to work on as part of their doctoral studies and for which they would be joint supervisors. UAlberta and IITR will develop a process to recruit prospective students to the projects.
3.3. Once connected with a project, the prospective student must present the required application forms and materials to their Home Institution.
   a. The current UAlberta forms can be found here: www.ualberta.ca/graduate-studies/prospective-students/apply-for-admission/shared-credential-applications.
   b. The current IIT form **.

3.4. If the Home Institution agrees to recommend the student, the forms will be forwarded to that student's potential supervising professor at the Collaborating Institution by the deadline mutually agreed upon in writing by the Liaison Officers, which will be in alignment with Collaborating Institution's procedures.

3.5. The Collaborating Institution will determine at its sole discretion whether to admit the student into the Joint Degree Program and will inform the Home Institution of its decision.

3.6. Each Collaborating Institution will admit up to a maximum of two (2) Joint Degree Students each academic year for the Joint Degree Program. The maximum number of students may be changed by mutual agreement of the parties and must be expressed in writing. While the number of incoming and outgoing Joint Degree Students may not be exactly equal every year, both parties will endeavour to exchange a similar number of Joint Degree Students.

4. **JOINT DEGREE PROGRAM REQUIREMENTS AND ADMINISTRATION**

4.1. While under the joint supervision of professors from each institution, Joint Degree Students will follow a program of study and research which will satisfy the requirements of their Home Institution, including any requirements for the Joint Degree Program outlined in Section 2 of Appendix A.

4.2. Both parties will provide an adequate orientation as well as ongoing advice and support to the Joint Degree Students. At UAlberta, the host Faculty will take the lead on assisting Joint Degree Students. At IIT, the Faculties of ** will take the lead on assisting Joint Degree Students.

4.3. Either party may, at its sole discretion, require a Joint Degree Student to withdraw from the Joint Degree Program. If required to withdraw from the Joint Degree Program, the student may be able to return to his/her studies at the Home Institution in the same graduate program and would receive appropriate credit for work completed at the Collaborating Institution while in the Joint Degree Program.

4.4. A student may withdraw, at any time, from the Joint Degree Program, and return to his/her studies at the Home Institution. The student will receive appropriate credit for work completed at the Collaborating Institution while in the Joint Degree Program.

4.5. Upon successful completion of the doctoral degree requirements of the Home Institution and any additional requirements for the Joint Degree Program, the Home Institution will confer on the Joint Degree Student the doctoral degree of that Institution for which the student qualifies. The Liaison Officer at the Home Institution shall inform the Liaison Officer at the Collaborating Institution of this award.

4.6. The designations on the Joint Degree Program Student's academic record will include the following:
   a. The UAlberta transcript notation will read: “Participating in a shared credential program offered jointly by this university and the Full, formal name of other institution.”
   b. The IITR transcript notation will read: “****.”
c. The UAlberta parchment notation will read “having completed all the statutory requirements of the program offered jointly by the University of Alberta and the Full, formal name of other institution has been granted the degree of [Official Degree Name] and awarded all the rights and privileges pertaining to this degree”.

d. IITR parchment notation will read: “***.”

5. **FEES AND FINANCIAL MATTERS**

5.1. The Joint Degree Program uses an exchange model for fees: for the duration of their participation in the Program, Joint Degree Students must pay to their Home Institution full tuition and all other required fees associated with full-time registration in the graduate program to which they have been admitted. Joint Degree Students will pay no application or tuition fees at the Collaborating Institution.

5.2. Other mandatory or non-instructional fees at the Collaborating Institution may require payment.
   a. While resident at UAlberta, all Joint Degree Students must pay non-instructional fees to UAlberta for health and dental coverage (UAHIP) and a public transportation pass (the “U-Pass”).
   b. Where resident at IITR, all Joint Degree Students must pay ……

5.3. Joint Degree Students are expected to have sufficient personal funds to cover any and all expenses not covered by either institution as detailed in this Agreement. Such expenses include:
   a. Other non-instructional fees;
   b. Living expenses not covered by the Collaborating Institution while spending time there (health care costs, etc.);
   c. Travel and transportation, including travel insurance;
   d. Text books and school supplies; and
   e. All necessary immigration documents.

5.4. For periods Joint Degree Students from the Collaborating Institution spend at their institution, both parties will provide a doctoral fellowship, through funding from within their own institution and/or from third parties. The fellowship will be at least sufficient to cover accommodation and meals.

5.5. Specific funding arrangements for each Joint Degree Student must be agreed to in a separate written document or documents. At UAlberta, for incoming students, the host department must submit this funding documentation to the Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research along with the admission documentation.

6. **HOUSING**

Each Institution shall endeavour to provide information to students regarding housing options, the cost of which must be paid by the student.

7. **REGULATIONS GOVERNING STUDENTS**

7.1. During their participation in the Joint Degree Program, students will be bound by the rules, regulations, and codes of conduct of the university or universities at which they are registered.

7.2. Joint Degree Students will be bound by the laws of the country in which they are resident.

7.3. Notwithstanding section 7.1, both institutions will work collaboratively to resolve any conflicts between Joint Degree Students and their supervisors.
8. **INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY**

8.1. At the outset of a Joint Degree Student’s program, the parties will work together to establish, in writing, all necessary arrangements regarding the ownership and protection of any intellectual property generated as a result of any research conducted by the Joint Degree Student during the program. In addressing any such intellectual property arrangements, the parties shall involve the Joint Degree Student, have regard for any policies and procedures in place at each institution, and ensure the Joint Degree Student is provided with a copy of the final written arrangements.

8.2. Notwithstanding anything else in this Agreement, the parties acknowledge that a Joint Degree Student shall own the copyright in his/her thesis.

9. **ACCESS TO INFORMATION AND PRIVACY LEGISLATION**

9.1. The parties acknowledge that UAlberta is a public body subject to the *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act* (Alberta) (“FOIP”), as amended. For further information about FOIP see [www.ipo.ualberta.ca](http://www.ipo.ualberta.ca). The parties agree to only use any personal information exchanged for the purposes of this Agreement for the purposes of administering this Joint Degree Program.

9.2. No personal information related to any Joint Degree Student will be released by UAlberta to IITR without the student’s prior written consent, except as permitted by law. Such consent will be obtained as part of the Shared Credential Initial Approval application form (see [www.ualberta.ca/graduate-studies/prospective-students/apply-for-admission/shared-credential/applications](http://www.ualberta.ca/graduate-studies/prospective-students/apply-for-admission/shared-credential/applications)) or in such other form as UAlberta may provide from time to time.

10. **CONFIDENTIALITY**

10.1. Each party who receives any information from the other marked “Confidential” (“Confidential Information”), will take reasonable steps to protect its confidentiality, will not disclose to any third party such Confidential Information without the prior written consent of the other party, and will only use such Confidential Information for the purposes contemplated in this Agreement.

10.2. For the purposes of this Agreement, Confidential Information does not include information (a) that is or becomes part of the public domain through no act of the receiving party, (b) that was in the receiving party’s possession before receipt from the disclosing party, (c) that was rightfully received by the receiving party from a third party without a duty of confidentiality, or (d) that is required to be disclosed under any applicable law or by order of a court.

11. **DISPUTE RESOLUTION**

Any dispute arising from this Agreement shall be resolved amicably through discussion between the parties’ Liaison Officers. In the event the Liaison Officers are unable to resolve the matter within 60 days of referral, or such additional time as mutually agreed to by the parties, the dispute shall be referred to the Title of IITR and the Provost and Vice-President (Academic) of UAlberta.

12. **GOVERNING LAW AND FORUM**

This Agreement will be interpreted and construed in accordance with the laws of Alberta and Canada, and the parties submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the Courts of Alberta.

13. **INDEMNIFICATION AND LIMITATION OF LIABILITY**

Each party (“Indemnifying Party”) shall:

a. be liable to the other party (“Indemnified Party”) for; and
b. indemnify and hold harmless the Indemnified Party from and against:

any and all liabilities, damages, costs, claims, suits or actions, loss, injury, death, or damage to any third
party (including students) occasioned by or as a result of the negligent acts, willful misconduct or breach of
obligations assumed under this Agreement by the Indemnifying Party or their employees, officers, agents,
and contractors.

Notwithstanding the above, in no event will either party be liable for any indirect, consequential, or
incidental claims incurred by any Indemnified Party in respect of this Agreement.

14. SURVIVAL

Terms of this Agreement which, by their nature, require the parties’ continued performance after this
Agreement’s termination, will continue in effect following any such termination.

15. COUNTERPARTS

The parties may sign this Agreement in counterparts, each of which being an original. Such counterparts
will together constitute one and the same agreement. Counterparts may be signed either in original or
electronic form and the parties shall adopt any signatures received electronically as original signatures of
the parties.

15. GENERAL

15.1. This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement and understanding between the parties with respect
to the Joint Degree Program and replaces all earlier agreements and discussions between the
parties. Appendix A, which includes details regarding the Joint Degree Program administration, forms
an integral part of this Agreement. Terms regarding individual Joint Degree Students such as funding
arrangements, dates of stay at the Host Institution, and the joint research project being undertaken
will be set out in a separate written document or documents.

15.2. The invalidity of any particular provision of this Agreement does not affect any other provision of it,
but the Agreement is to be construed as if the invalid provision had been omitted.

15.3. Nothing in this Agreement shall make the relationship between the parties one of partnership, joint
venture or employment. Nothing in this Agreement constitutes authority for one party to make
commitments which bind the other party or to otherwise act on behalf of such other party.

15.4. No part of this Agreement may be assigned by either party without the consent of the other party.

15.5. Neither party will use, nor shall it permit any person employed by it to use, identifying marks of the
other party, other than with the written consent of such other party, which may be arbitrarily withheld.

16. COMING INTO FORCE, TERMINATION, AND AMENDMENTS

16.1. This Agreement comes into effect on the date on which it has been signed by both parties and will
continue in effect for a period of three (3) years or until terminated in accordance with section 16.2.

16.2. The parties may mutually terminate this Agreement by written agreement. Alternatively, either party
may terminate this Agreement by giving twelve (12) months’ written notice of termination to the other
party.

16.3. If this Agreement is terminated or not renewed, the parties agree that any Joint Degree Students
accepted by the Collaborating Institution will be given reasonable time to complete their studies.
16.4. The parties may amend or extend this Agreement by written agreement.

The parties have signed this Agreement on the dates indicated below.

Signed for and on behalf of
INDIAN INSTITUTE OF TECHNOLOGY
ROORKEE
the_____ day of __________ 2019.

__________________________
Name

__________________________
Title

Signed for and on behalf of
THE GOVERNORS OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF ALBERTA
the_____ day of ________ 2019.

__________________________
Dr. David Turpin, CM, LLD, FRSC
President and Vice-Chancellor

the_____ day of __________ 2019.

__________________________
Name

__________________________
Title
APPENDIX A

1. **Application, Selection, and Admission of Students:**

   1.1. Every Joint Degree Student must meet the normal admission requirements and application deadlines of both parties for the relevant degree programs.

2. **Joint Degree Program Requirements and Administration:**

   2.1. **Physical Residency Requirements:**

      a. It is expected that students will successfully complete all their required courses, their comprehensive examination (if required), and their candidacy exam at their Home Institution before visiting the Collaborating Institution, unless a different set of courses at the other Collaborating Institution is approved by the Joint Degree Student’s supervisory committee.

      b. Joint Degree Students must spend at least six (6) months and a maximum of twelve (12) months at the Collaborating Institution doing research related to their doctoral program, which will be counted toward the residency requirements of their Home Institution. Periods exceeding twelve months must be discussed and mutually agreed upon in writing by both parties.

   2.2. **Academic Program Requirements:** Joint Degree Students will follow a program of study and research which shall satisfy the degree requirements of their Home Institution.

   2.3. **Ethics Requirements:** In accordance with UAlberta policy, every Joint Degree Student must meet UAlberta’s ethics and academic integrity training requirements set by the UAlberta Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research. Further information regarding those requirements can be found here: [https://uofa.ualberta.ca/graduate-studies/current-students/academicRequirements/ethics](https://uofa.ualberta.ca/graduate-studies/current-students/academicRequirements/ethics). Additionally, Joint Degree Students must follow all UAlberta policies and procedures relating to research involving either human participants or animals.

   2.4. **Professional Development Requirement:** Every Joint Degree Student from UAlberta must meet UAlberta’s professional development requirements set by the UAlberta Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research. Further information regarding those requirements can be found here: [https://www.ualberta.ca/graduate-studies/professional-development/professional-developmentRequirement](https://www.ualberta.ca/graduate-studies/professional-development/professional-developmentRequirement).

   2.5. **Joint Supervision:** Every Joint Degree Student must have a supervisor at each institution while in the Joint Degree Program.

   2.6. **Doctoral Supervisory Committee:** Every Joint Degree Student must have a supervisory committee comprised of at least three members, including the supervisors at both parties.

   2.7. **Required Examinations:**

      a. Doctoral Joint Degree Students whose Home Institution is UAlberta must pass a doctoral candidacy examination in accordance with UAlberta policies before they can proceed to final thesis defense.

      b. Joint Degree Students whose Home Institution is IIT must **

      c. Every Joint Degree Student must successfully prepare and defend a thesis at their Home Institution before an examining committee that is set up in accordance with the relevant policies of the Home Institution, unless otherwise stated in this Agreement. The supervisor
from the Collaborating Institution must be invited to participate in the thesis defense. If they participate, they can do so by teleconference.
AGREEMENT FOR A CO-SUPERVISED/JOINT DOCTORAL DEGREE PROGRAM

BETWEEN

INDIAN INSTITUTE OF TECHNOLOGY BOMBAY
Located in Powai, Mumbai, Maharashtra, India ("IITB")

AND

THE GOVERNORS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF ALBERTA
As represented by the Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research
Located in Edmonton, Alberta, Canada ("UAlberta")

WHEREAS:

A. The parties to this Agreement have entered into a memorandum of understanding ("MoU") that contemplates various forms of academic cooperation; and

B. The parties wish to formalize the terms for an Agreement under which doctoral students from either party may pursue a Co-supervised/Joint Degree Program.

NOW THEREFORE in consideration of the above and other good and valuable consideration, the parties agree as follows:

1. DEFINITIONS

1.1. In this Agreement:

a. “Collaborating Institution” means the institution which is not the Co-supervised/Joint Degree Student’s Home Institution.

b. “Co-supervised/Joint Degree Program” means a program of study under which students may obtain a doctoral degree from UAlberta OR a doctoral degree from IITB.

- At IITB, the Co-supervised/Joint Degree Program will be referred to as a co-supervised doctoral degree program. At UAlberta, it will be referred to as a joint doctoral degree program.

- In each instance, the degree will be granted by the Home Institution, there will be a supervisor at each institution, and the Home Institution will provide formal recognition of the completion of the Co-supervised/Joint Degree Program. At UAlberta, this will be done through a notation on the transcript and parchment. At IITB, this will be done through the awarded of a separate certificate.

- At UAlberta, participating faculties must first obtain faculty and Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research approval. At UAlberta, the proposed initial participating faculties are Agricultural, Life and Environmental Sciences (ALES); Engineering; Medicine and Dentistry; Public Health; and Science. Additional faculties may be included by written agreement between the parties.

c. “Co-supervised/Joint Degree Student” means a student who is participating in the Co-supervised/Joint Degree Program.
d. “Home Institution” means the institution where the student was originally admitted to a doctoral degree program in one of the degree programs contemplated by the Co-supervised/Joint Degree Program.

2. LIAISON OFFICERS

2.1. Each party shall designate a liaison officer (“Liaison Officer”) who will be responsible for coordinating the specific aspects of the Co-supervised/Joint Degree Program as well as advising and assisting students taking part in the Co-supervised/Joint Degree Program.

2.2. The designated Liaison Officers for the Agreement are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>for IITB</th>
<th>for UAlberta – general agreement matters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Dr. Cen Huang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Position</td>
<td>Vice-Provost and Associate Vice-President (International)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full Mailing Address</td>
<td>University of Alberta International University of Alberta 142 Telus Centre Edmonton, Alberta T6G 2R3 Canada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Telephone:</td>
<td>Telephone: +1-780-492-0821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E-mail:</td>
<td><a href="mailto:cen.huang@ualberta.ca">cen.huang@ualberta.ca</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.3. Liaison Officers. The parties agree that either party may change its designated Liaison Officer by notifying the other party in writing of such change.

2.4. Any notice to be given by either party pursuant to this Agreement must be in writing and may be delivered by commercial courier, registered mail (unless a postal strike or other disruption is currently in place), facsimile machine, or e-mail to the relevant Liaison Officer using the contact information set out above (or such other contact information as notified by a party by written notice given in accordance with this clause).

2.5. If a party receives a message that a notice sent to an e-mail address is undeliverable, or that the Liaison Officer is out of the office, or if the party has any other reason to believe that the delivery of a notice was ineffective, then the party will send the notice using a different method.

3. APPLICATION, SELECTION, AND ADMISSION OF STUDENTS FOR THE CO-SUPERVISED/Joint Degree Program

3.1. A Co-supervised/Joint Degree Student must first be admitted into a doctoral degree program at their Home Institution.

3.2. Collaborating professors from UAlberta and IITB will jointly identify research projects for Co-supervised/Joint Degree Students to work on as part of their doctoral studies and for which they would be joint supervisors. UAlberta and IITB will develop a process to recruit prospective students to the projects.

3.3. Once connected with a project, the prospective student must present the required application forms and materials to their Home Institution.

a. The current UAlberta forms can be found here: www.ualberta.ca/graduate-studies/prospective-students/apply-for-admission/shared-credential-applications.

b. The current IITB form **.
3.4. If the Home Institution agrees to recommend the student, the forms will be forwarded to that student’s potential supervising professor at the Collaborating Institution by the deadline mutually agreed upon in writing by the Liaison Officers, which will be in alignment with Collaborating Institution’s procedures.

3.5. The Collaborating Institution will determine at its sole discretion whether to admit the student into the Co-supervised/Joint Degree Program and will inform the Home Institution of its decision.

3.6. Each Collaborating Institution will admit up to a maximum of two (2) Co-supervised/Joint Degree Students each academic year for the Co-supervised/Joint Degree Program. The maximum number of students may be changed by mutual agreement of the parties and must be expressed in writing. While the number of incoming and outgoing Co-supervised/Joint Degree Students may not be exactly equal every year, both parties will endeavour to exchange a similar number of Co-supervised/Joint Degree Students.

4. **CO-SUPERVISED/JOINT DEGREE PROGRAM REQUIREMENTS AND ADMINISTRATION**

4.1. While under the joint supervision of professors from each institution, Co-supervised/Joint Degree Students will follow a program of study and research which will satisfy the requirements of their Home Institution, including any requirements for the Co-supervised/Joint Degree Program outlined in Section 2 of Appendix A.

4.2. Both parties will provide an adequate orientation as well as ongoing advice and support to the Co-supervised/Joint Degree Students. At UAlberta, the host Faculty will take the lead on assisting Co-supervised/Joint Degree Students. At IITB, ** will take the lead on assisting Co-supervised/Joint Degree Students.

4.3. Either party may, at its sole discretion, require a Co-supervised/Joint Degree Student to withdraw from the Co-supervised/Joint Degree Program. If required to withdraw from the Co-supervised/Joint Degree Program, the student may be able to return to his/her studies at the Home Institution in the same graduate program and would receive appropriate credit for work completed at the Collaborating Institution while in the Co-supervised/Joint Degree Program.

4.4. A student may withdraw, at any time, from the Co-supervised/Joint Degree Program, and return to his/her studies at the Home Institution. The student will receive appropriate credit for work completed at the Collaborating Institution while in the Co-supervised/Joint Degree Program.

4.5. Upon successful completion of the doctoral degree requirements of the Home Institution and any additional requirements for the Co-supervised/Joint Degree Program, the Home Institution will confer on the Co-supervised/Joint Degree Student the doctoral degree of that Institution for which the student qualifies. The Liaison Officer at the Home Institution shall inform the Liaison Officer at the Collaborating Institution of this award.

4.6. The designations on the Co-supervised/Joint Degree Program Student’s academic record will include the following:

   a. The UAlberta transcript notation will read: “Participating in a shared credential program offered jointly by this university and the Full, formal name of other institution.”

   b. The UAlberta parchment notation will read “having completed all the statutory requirements of the program offered jointly by the University of Alberta and the Full, formal name of other institution has been granted the degree of [Official Degree Name] and awarded all the rights and privileges pertaining to this degree.”
c. IITB parchment notation will not include reference to the joint program. IITB will provide a certificate to Co-supervised/Joint Degree Program Students.

5. FEES AND FINANCIAL MATTERS

5.1. The Co-supervised/Joint Degree Program uses an exchange model for fees: for the duration of their participation in the Program, Co-supervised/Joint Degree Students must pay to their Home Institution full tuition and all other required fees associated with full-time registration in the graduate program to which they have been admitted. Co-supervised/Joint Degree Students will pay no application or tuition fees at the Collaborating Institution.

5.2. Other mandatory or non-instructional fees at the Collaborating Institution may require payment.
   a. While resident at UAlberta, all Co-supervised/Joint Degree Students must pay non-instructional fees to UAlberta for health and dental coverage (UAHIP) and a public transportation pass (the “U-Pass”).
   b. Where resident at IITB, all Co-supervised/Joint Degree Students must pay ...

5.3. Co-supervised/Joint Degree Students are expected to have sufficient personal funds to cover any and all expenses not covered by either institution as detailed in this Agreement. Such expenses include:
   a. Other non-instructional fees;
   b. Living expenses not covered by the Collaborating Institution while spending time there (health care costs, etc.);
   c. Recreation;
   d. Travel and transportation, including travel insurance;
   e. Text books and school supplies; and
   f. All necessary immigration documents.

5.4. For periods Co-supervised/Joint Degree Students from the Collaborating Institution spend at their institution, both parties will provide a doctoral fellowship, through funding from within their own institution and/or from third parties. The fellowship will be at least sufficient to cover accommodation and meals.

5.5. Specific funding arrangements for each Co-supervised/Joint Degree Student will be agreed to in a separate written document or documents. At UAlberta, for incoming students, the host department must submit this funding documentation to the Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research along with the admission documentation.

6. HOUSING

Each Institution shall endeavour to provide information to students regarding housing options, the cost of which must be paid by the student.

7. REGULATIONS GOVERNING STUDENTS

7.1. During their participation in the Co-supervised/Joint Degree Program, students will be bound by the rules, regulations, and codes of conduct of the university or universities at which they are registered.

7.2. Co-supervised/Joint Degree Students will be bound by the laws of the country in which they are resident.

7.3. Notwithstanding section 7.1, both institutions will work collaboratively to resolve any conflicts between Co-supervised/Joint Degree Students and their supervisors.

8. INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY
8.1. At the outset of a Co-supervised/Joint Degree Student’s program, the parties will work together to establish, in writing, all necessary arrangements regarding the ownership and protection of any intellectual property generated as a result of any research conducted by the Co-supervised/Joint Degree Student during the program. In addressing any such intellectual property arrangements, the parties shall involve the Co-supervised/Joint Degree Student, have regard for any policies and procedures in place at each institution, and ensure the Co-supervised/Joint Degree Student is provided with a copy of the final written arrangements.

8.2. Notwithstanding anything else in this Agreement, the parties acknowledge that a Co-supervised/Joint Degree Student shall own the copyright in his/her thesis.

9. ACCESS TO INFORMATION AND PRIVACY LEGISLATION

9.1. The parties acknowledge that UAlberta is a public body subject to the Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act (Alberta) (“FOIP”), as amended. For further information about FOIP see www.ico.ualberta.ca. The parties agree to only use any personal information exchanged for the purposes of this Agreement for the purposes of administering this Co-supervised/Joint Degree Program.

9.2. No personal information related to any Co-supervised/Joint Degree Student will be released by UAlberta to IITB without the student’s prior written consent, except as permitted by law. Such consent will be obtained as part of the Shared Credential Initial Approval application form (see www.ualberta.ca/graduate-studies/prospective-students/apply-for-admission/shared-credential-applications) or in such other form as UAlberta may provide from time to time.

10. CONFIDENTIALITY

10.1. Each party who receives any information from the other marked “Confidential” (“Confidential Information”), will take reasonable steps to protect its confidentiality, will not disclose to any third party such Confidential Information without the prior written consent of the other party, and will only use such Confidential Information for the purposes contemplated in this Agreement.

10.2. For the purposes of this Agreement, Confidential Information does not include information (a) that is or becomes part of the public domain through no act of the receiving party, (b) that was in the receiving party’s possession before receipt from the disclosing party, (c) that was rightfully received by the receiving party from a third party without a duty of confidentiality, or (d) that is required to be disclosed under any applicable law or by order of a court.

11. DISPUTE RESOLUTION

11.1. Any dispute arising from this Agreement shall be resolved amicably through discussion between the parties’ Liaison Officers. In the event the Liaison Officers are unable to resolve the matter within 60 days of referral, or such additional time as mutually agreed to by the parties, the dispute shall be referred to the Title of IITB and the Provost and Vice-President (Academic) of UAlberta.

12. GOVERNING LAW AND FORUM

12.1. This Agreement will be interpreted and construed in accordance with the laws of Alberta and Canada, and the parties submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the Courts of Alberta.

13. INDEMNIFICATION AND LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

13.1 Each party (“Indemnifying Party”) shall:

    a. be liable to the other party (“Indemnified Party”) for; and
b. indemnify and hold harmless the Indemnified Party from and against:

any and all liabilities, damages, costs, claims, suits or actions, loss, injury, death, or damage to any
third party (including students) occasioned by or as a result of the negligent acts, willful misconduct
or breach of obligations assumed under this Agreement by the Indemnifying Party or their
employees, officers, agents, and contractors.

Notwithstanding the above, in no event will either party be liable for any indirect, consequential, or
incidental claims incurred by any Indemnified Party in respect of this Agreement.

14. SURVIVAL

14.1. Terms of this Agreement which, by their nature, require the parties’ continued performance after this
Agreement’s termination, will continue in effect following any such termination.

15. COUNTERPARTS

15.1. The parties may sign this Agreement in counterparts, each of which being an original. Such
counterparts will together constitute one and the same agreement. Counterparts may be signed either
in original or electronic form and the parties shall adopt any signatures received electronically as
original signatures of the parties.

16. GENERAL

16.1. This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement and understanding between the parties with respect
to the Co-supervised/Joint Degree Program and replaces all earlier agreements and discussions
between the parties. Appendix A, which includes details regarding the Co-supervised/Joint Degree
Program administration, forms an integral part of this Agreement. Terms regarding individual Co-
supervised/Joint Degree Students such as funding arrangements, dates of stay at the Host Institution,
and the joint research project being undertaken will be set out in a separate written document or
documents.

16.2. The invalidity of any particular provision of this Agreement does not affect any other provision of it,
but the Agreement is to be construed as if the invalid provision had been omitted.

16.3. Nothing in this Agreement shall make the relationship between the parties one of partnership, joint
venture or employment. Nothing in this Agreement constitutes authority for one party to make
commitments which bind the other party or to otherwise act on behalf of such other party.

16.4. No part of this Agreement may be assigned by either party without the consent of the other party.

16.5. Neither party will use, nor shall it permit any person employed by it to use, identifying marks of the
other party, other than with the written consent of such other party, which may be arbitrarily withheld.

17. COMING INTO FORCE, TERMINATION, AND AMENDMENTS

17.1. This Agreement comes into effect on the date on which it has been signed by both parties and will
continue in effect for a period of three (3) years or until terminated in accordance with section 16.2.

17.2. The parties may mutually terminate this Agreement by written agreement. Alternatively, either party
may terminate this Agreement by giving twelve (12) months’ written notice of termination to the other
party.
17.3. If this Agreement is terminated or not renewed, the parties agree that any Co-supervised/Joint Degree Students accepted by the Collaborating Institution will be given reasonable time to complete their studies.

17.4. The parties may amend or extend this Agreement by written agreement.

The parties have signed this Agreement on the dates indicated below.

Signed for and on behalf of
INDIAN INSTITUTE OF TECHNOLOGY BOMBAY
the_____ day of __________ 2019.

__________________________
Name

Title

Signed for and on behalf of
THE GOVERNORS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF ALBERTA
the _____ day of ________ 2019.

__________________________
Dr. David Turpin, CM, LLD, FRSC
President and Vice-Chancellor
APPENDIX A

1. Application, Selection, and Admission of Students:
   
   1.1. Every Co-supervised/Joint Degree Student must meet the normal admission requirements and application deadlines of both parties for the relevant degree programs.

2. Co-supervised/Joint Degree Program Requirements and Administration:

   2.1. Physical Residency Requirements:
   
   a. It is expected that Co-supervised/Joint Degree Students will successfully complete all their required courses, their comprehensive examination (if required), and their candidacy exam at their Home Institution before visiting the Collaborating Institution, unless a different set of courses at the other Collaborating Institution is approved by the Co-supervised/Joint Degree Student's supervisory committee.
   
   b. Co-supervised/Joint Degree Students must spend at least six (6) months and a maximum of twelve (12) months at the Collaborating Institution doing research related to their doctoral program, which will be counted toward the residency requirements of their Home Institution. Periods exceeding twelve months must be discussed and mutually agreed upon in writing by both parties.

   2.2. Academic Program Requirements: Co-supervised/Joint Degree Students will follow a program of study and research which shall satisfy the degree requirements of their Home Institution.

   2.3. Ethics Requirements: In accordance with UAlberta policy, every Co-supervised/Joint Degree Student must meet UAlberta’s ethics and academic integrity training requirements set by the UAlberta Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research. Further information regarding those requirements can be found here: [https://uofa.ualberta.ca/graduate-studies/current-students/academic-requirements/ethics](https://uofa.ualberta.ca/graduate-studies/current-students/academic-requirements/ethics). Additionally, Co-supervised/Joint Degree Students must follow all UAlberta policies and procedures relating to research involving either human participants or animals.

   2.4. Professional Development Requirement: Every Co-supervised/Joint Degree Student from UAlberta must meet UAlberta’s professional development requirements set by the UAlberta Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research. Further information regarding those requirements can be found here: [https://www.ualberta.ca/graduate-studies/professional-development/professional-development-requirement](https://www.ualberta.ca/graduate-studies/professional-development/professional-development-requirement).

   2.5. Joint Supervision: Every Co-supervised/Joint Degree Student must have a supervisor at each institution while in the Co-supervised/Joint Degree Program.

   2.6. Doctoral Supervisory Committee: Every Co-supervised/Joint Degree Student must have a supervisory committee comprised of at least three members, including the supervisors at both parties.

   2.7. Required Examinations:
   
   a. Doctoral Co-supervised/Joint Degree Students whose Home Institution is UAlberta must pass a doctoral candidacy examination in accordance with UAlberta policies before they can proceed to final thesis defense.
   
   b. Co-supervised/Joint Degree Students whose Home Institution is IITB must **
c. Every Co-supervised/Joint Degree Student must successfully prepare and defend a thesis at their Home Institution before an examining committee that is set up in accordance with the relevant policies of the Home Institution, unless otherwise stated in this Agreement. The supervisor from the Collaborating Institution must be invited to participate in the thesis defense. If they participate, they can do so by teleconference.
AGREEMENT FOR A JOINT DOCTORAL DEGREE PROGRAM

BETWEEN

INDIAN INSTITUTE OF TECHNOLOGY KHARAGPUR
Located in Kharagpur, West Bengal, India
(“IITKGP”)

AND

THE GOVERNORS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF ALBERTA
As represented by the Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research
Located in Edmonton, Alberta, Canada
(“UAlberta”)

WHEREAS:

A. The parties to this Agreement have entered into a memorandum of understanding (“MoU”) that contemplates various forms of academic cooperation; and

B. The parties wish to formalize the terms for an Agreement under which doctoral students from either party may pursue a Joint Degree Program.

NOW THEREFORE in consideration of the above and other good and valuable consideration, the parties agree as follows:

1. DEFINITIONS

1.1. In this Agreement:

a. “Collaborating Institution” means the institution which is not the Joint Degree Student’s Home Institution.

b. “Joint Degree Program” means a program of study under which students may obtain a doctoral degree from UAlberta OR a doctoral degree from IITKGP.

• In each instance, the degree will be granted by the Home Institution, and the Home Institution will provide formal recognition of the completion of the Joint Degree Program through a notation on the transcript and on the parchment.

• At UAlberta, participating faculties must first obtain faculty and Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research approval. At UAlberta, the proposed initial participating Faculties are Agricultural, Life and Environmental Sciences (ALES); Engineering; Medicine and Dentistry; Public Health; and Science. Additional Faculties may be included by written agreement between the parties.

• At IITKGP, all the departments, schools and centres of the institution will participate in this program.

c. “Joint Degree Student” means a student who is participating in the Joint Degree Program.

d. “Home Institution” means the institution where the student was originally admitted to a doctoral degree program in one of the degree programs contemplated by the Joint Degree Program.
2. **LIAISON OFFICERS**

2.1. Each party shall designate a liaison officer ("Liaison Officer") who will be responsible for coordinating the specific aspects of the Joint Degree Program as well as advising and assisting students taking part in the Joint Degree Program.

2.2. The designated Liaison Officers for the Agreement are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>for IITKGP</th>
<th>for UAlberta – General Agreement Matters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prof. Baidurya Bhattacharya</td>
<td>Dr. Cen Huang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dean, International Relations</td>
<td>Vice-Provost and Associate Vice-President (International)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indian Institute of Technology, Kharagpur</td>
<td>University of Alberta International</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kharagpur, West Bengal – 721302</td>
<td>University of Alberta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDIA</td>
<td>142 Telus Centre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Edmonton, Alberta T6G 2R3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Canada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Telephone: +91-3222-282234</td>
<td>Telephone: +1-780-492-0821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E-mail: <a href="mailto:deanir@adm.iitkgp.ac.in">deanir@adm.iitkgp.ac.in</a></td>
<td>E-mail: <a href="mailto:cen.huang@ualberta.ca">cen.huang@ualberta.ca</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.3. All notices sent pursuant to this Agreement must be sent to the above-mentioned Liaison Officers. The parties agree that either party may change its designated Liaison Officer by notifying the other party in writing of such change.

2.4. Any notice to be given by either party pursuant to this Agreement must be in writing and may be delivered by commercial courier, registered mail (unless a postal strike or other disruption is currently in place), facsimile machine, or e-mail to the relevant Liaison Officer using the contact information set out above (or such other contact information as notified by a party by written notice given in accordance with this clause).

2.5. If a party receives a message that a notice sent to an e-mail address is undeliverable, or that the Liaison Officer is out of the office, or if the party has any other reason to believe that the delivery of a notice was ineffective, then the party will send the notice using a different method.

3. **APPLICATION, SELECTION, AND ADMISSION OF STUDENTS FOR THE JOINT DEGREE PROGRAM**

3.1. A Joint Degree Student must first be admitted into a doctoral degree program at their Home Institution.

3.2. Collaborating professors from UAlberta and IITKGP will jointly identify research projects for Joint Degree Students to work on as part of their doctoral studies and for which they would be joint supervisors. UAlberta and IITKGP will develop a process to recruit prospective students to the projects.

3.3. Once connected with a project, the prospective student must present the required application forms and materials to their Home Institution.
   
   a. The current UAlberta forms can be found here: [www.ualberta.ca/graduate-studies/prospective-students/apply-for-admission/shared-credential-applications](http://www.ualberta.ca/graduate-studies/prospective-students/apply-for-admission/shared-credential-applications).

   b. The current IITKGP form can be found here: [https://international.iitkgp.ac.in/howtoapply/](https://international.iitkgp.ac.in/howtoapply/).

3.4. If the Home Institution agrees to recommend the student, the forms will be forwarded to that student’s potential supervising professor at the Collaborating Institution by the deadline mutually agreed upon.
in writing by the Liaison Officers, which will be in alignment with Collaborating Institution’s procedures.

3.5. The Collaborating Institution will determine at its sole discretion whether to admit the student into the Joint Degree Program and will inform the Home Institution of its decision.

3.6. Each Collaborating Institution will admit up to a maximum of two (2) Joint Degree Students each academic year for the Joint Degree Program. The maximum number of students may be changed by mutual agreement of the parties and must be expressed in writing. While the number of incoming and outgoing Joint Degree Students may not be exactly equal every year, both parties will endeavour to exchange a similar number of Joint Degree Students.

4. **JOINT DEGREE PROGRAM REQUIREMENTS AND ADMINISTRATION**

4.1. While under the joint supervision of professors from each institution, Joint Degree Students will follow a program of study and research which will satisfy the requirements of their Home Institution, including any requirements for the Joint Degree Program outlined in Section 2 of Appendix A.

4.2. Both parties will provide an adequate orientation as well as ongoing advice and support to the Joint Degree Students. At UAlberta, the host Faculty will take the lead on assisting Joint Degree Students. At IITKGP, the Office of International Relations will take the lead on assisting Joint Degree Students.

4.3. Either party may, at its sole discretion, require a Joint Degree Student to withdraw from the Joint Degree Program. If required to withdraw from the Joint Degree Program, the student may be able to return to his/her studies at the Home Institution in the same graduate program and would receive appropriate credit for work completed at the Collaborating Institution while in the Joint Degree Program.

4.4. A student may withdraw, at any time, from the Joint Degree Program, and return to his/her studies at the Home Institution. The student will receive appropriate credit for work completed at the Collaborating Institution while in the Joint Degree Program.

4.5. Upon successful completion of the doctoral degree requirements of the Home Institution and any additional requirements for the Joint Degree Program, the Home Institution will confer on the Joint Degree Student the doctoral degree of that Institution for which the student qualifies. The Liaison Officer at the Home Institution shall inform the Liaison Officer at the Collaborating Institution of this award.

4.6. The designations on the Joint Degree Program Student’s academic record will include the following:

   a. The UAlberta transcript notation will read: “Participating in a shared credential program offered jointly by this university and the Indian Institute of Technology, Kharagpur.”

   b. The IITKGP transcript notation will read: “Participating in the Joint Doctoral Degree Program with University of Alberta.”

   c. The UAlberta parchment notation will read “having completed all the statutory requirements of the program offered jointly by the University of Alberta and the Indian Institute of Technology, Kharagpur has been granted the degree of [Official Degree Name] and awarded all the rights and privileges pertaining to this degree”.

   d. IITKGP parchment notation will read: “INDIAN INSTITUTE OF TECHNOLOGY KHARAGPUR upon the recommendation of the Senate hereby confers the degree of Doctor of Philosophy on
5. FEES AND FINANCIAL MATTERS

5.1. The Joint Degree Program uses an exchange model for fees: for the duration of their participation in the Program, Joint Degree Students must pay to their Home Institution full tuition and all other required fees associated with full-time registration in the graduate program to which they have been admitted. Joint Degree Students will pay no application or tuition fees at the Collaborating Institution.

5.2. Other mandatory or non-instructional fees at the Collaborating Institution may require payment.
   a. While resident at UAlberta, all Joint Degree Students must pay non-instructional fees to UAlberta for health and dental coverage (UAHIP) and a public transportation pass (the “U-Pass”).
   b. Where resident at IITKGP, all Joint Degree Students must pay insurance premium for the institute medical insurance coverage and Student Life Fees.

5.3. Joint Degree Students are expected to have sufficient personal funds to cover any and all expenses not covered by either institution as detailed in this Agreement. Such expenses include:
   a. Other non-instructional fees;
   b. Living expenses not covered by the Collaborating Institution while spending time there (health care costs, etc.);
   c. Recreation;
   d. Travel and transportation, including travel insurance;
   e. Text books and school supplies; and
   f. All necessary immigration documents.

5.4. For periods Joint Degree Students from the Collaborating Institution spend at their institution, both parties will provide a doctoral fellowship, through funding from within their own institution and/or from third parties. The fellowship will be at least sufficient to cover accommodation and meals.

5.5. Specific funding arrangements for each Joint Degree Student will be agreed to in a separate written document or documents. At UAlberta, for incoming students, the host department must submit this funding documentation to the Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research along with the admission documentation.

6. HOUSING

Each Institution shall endeavour to provide information to students regarding housing options, the cost of which must be paid by the student.

7. REGULATIONS GOVERNING STUDENTS

7.1. During their participation in the Joint Degree Program, students will be bound by the rules, regulations, and codes of conduct of the university or universities at which they are registered.

7.2. Joint Degree Students will be bound by the laws of the country in which they are resident.

7.3. Notwithstanding section 7.1, both institutions will work collaboratively to resolve any conflicts between Joint Degree Students and their supervisors.

8. INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY
8.1. At the outset of a Joint Degree Student’s program, the parties will work together to establish, in writing, all necessary arrangements regarding the ownership and protection of any intellectual property generated as a result of any research conducted by the Joint Degree Student during the program. In addressing any such intellectual property arrangements, the parties shall involve the Joint Degree Student, have regard for any policies and procedures in place at each institution, and ensure the Joint Degree Student is provided with a copy of the final written arrangements.

8.2. Notwithstanding anything else in this Agreement, the parties acknowledge that a Joint Degree Student shall own the copyright in his/her thesis.

9. ACCESS TO INFORMATION AND PRIVACY LEGISLATION

9.1. The parties acknowledge that UAlberta is a public body subject to the Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act (Alberta) (“FOIP”), as amended. For further information about FOIP see www.ipo.ualberta.ca. The parties agree to only use any personal information exchanged for the purposes of this Agreement for the purposes of administering this Joint Degree Program in accordance with FOIP and relevant privacy acts of India.

9.2. No personal information related to any Joint Degree Student will be released by UAlberta to IITKGP or IITKGP to UAlberta without the student’s prior written consent, except as permitted by law. Such consent will be obtained as part of the Shared Credential Initial Approval application form (see www.ualberta.ca/graduate-studies/prospective-students/apply-for-admission/shared-credential-applications) or in such other form as UAlberta or IITKGP may provide from time to time.

10. CONFIDENTIALITY

10.1. Each party who receives any information from the other marked “Confidential” (“Confidential Information”), will take reasonable steps to protect its confidentiality, will not disclose to any third party such Confidential Information without the prior written consent of the other party, and will only use such Confidential Information for the purposes contemplated in this Agreement.

10.2. For the purposes of this Agreement, Confidential Information does not include information (a) that is or becomes part of the public domain through no act of the receiving party, (b) that was in the receiving party’s possession before receipt from the disclosing party, (c) that was rightfully received by the receiving party from a third party without a duty of confidentiality, or (d) that is required to be disclosed under any applicable law or by order of a court.

11. DISPUTE RESOLUTION

Any dispute arising from this Agreement shall be resolved amicably through discussion between the parties’ Liaison Officers. In the event the Liaison Officers are unable to resolve the matter within 60 days of referral, or such additional time as mutually agreed to by the parties, the dispute shall be referred to the Director of IITKGP and the Provost and Vice-President (Academic) of UAlberta.

Should a dispute remain unresolved for a period of 2 (two) months or more, either Party may refer the dispute to arbitration using the UNCITRAL (United Nations Commission on International Trade Law) Arbitration and Conciliation Act, 1996. The venue of such arbitration shall be in the defendant’s jurisdiction. The arbitration shall be conducted in English. The decision of the arbitrator shall be final and binding and shall not be subject to appeal.

12. INDEMNIFICATION AND LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

Each party (“Indemnifying Party”) shall:
a. be liable to the other party ("Indemnified Party") for; and
b. indemnify and hold harmless the Indemnified Party from and against:

any and all liabilities, damages, costs, claims, suits or actions, loss, injury, death, or damage to any third party (including students) occasioned by or as a result of the negligent acts, willful misconduct or breach of obligations assumed under this Agreement by the Indemnifying Party or their employees, officers, agents, and contractors.

Notwithstanding the above, in no event will either party be liable for any indirect, consequential, or incidental claims incurred by any Indemnified Party in respect of this Agreement.

13. SURVIVAL

Terms of this Agreement which, by their nature, require the parties’ continued performance after this Agreement’s termination, will continue in effect following any such termination.

14. COUNTERPARTS

The parties may sign this Agreement in counterparts, each of which being an original. Such counterparts will together constitute one and the same agreement. Counterparts may be signed either in original or electronic form and the parties shall adopt any signatures received electronically as original signatures of the parties.

15. GENERAL

15.1. This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement and understanding between the parties with respect to the Joint Degree Program and replaces all earlier agreements and discussions between the parties. Appendix A, which includes details regarding the Joint Degree Program administration, forms an integral part of this Agreement. Terms regarding individual Joint Degree Students such as funding arrangements, dates of stay at the Host Institution, and the joint research project being undertaken will be set out in a separate written document or documents.

15.2. The invalidity of any particular provision of this Agreement does not affect any other provision of it, but the Agreement is to be construed as if the invalid provision had been omitted.

15.3. Nothing in this Agreement shall make the relationship between the parties one of partnership, joint venture or employment. Nothing in this Agreement constitutes authority for one party to make commitments which bind the other party or to otherwise act on behalf of such other party.

15.4. No part of this Agreement may be assigned by either party without the consent of the other party.

15.5. Neither party will use, nor shall it permit any person employed by it to use, identifying marks of the other party, other than with the written consent of such other party, which may be arbitrarily withheld.

16. COMING INTO FORCE, TERMINATION, AND AMENDMENTS

16.1. This Agreement comes into effect on the date on which it has been signed by both parties and will continue in effect for a period of three (3) years or until terminated in accordance with section 16.2.

16.2. The parties may mutually terminate this Agreement by written agreement. Alternatively, either party may terminate this Agreement by giving twelve (12) months’ written notice of termination to the other party.
16.3. If this Agreement is terminated or not renewed, the parties agree that any Joint Degree Students accepted by the Collaborating Institution will be given reasonable time to complete their studies.

16.4. The parties may amend or extend this Agreement by written agreement.

The parties have signed this Agreement on the dates indicated below.

Signed for and on behalf of

INDIAN INSTITUTE OF TECHNOLOGY, KHARAGPUR

the_____ day of __________ 2019.

Prof. S. K. Bhattacharyya
Director

the_____ day of __________ 2019.

Prof. Baidurya Bhattacharya
Dean, International Relations

Signed for and on behalf of

THE GOVERNORS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF ALBERTA

the _____ day of ________ 2019.

Dr. David Turpin, CM, LLD, FRSC
President and Vice-Chancellor

the_____ day of __________ 2019.
APPENDIX A

1. Application, Selection, and Admission of Students:

   1.1. Every Joint Degree Student must meet the normal admission requirements and application deadlines of both parties for the relevant degree programs.

2. Joint Degree Program Requirements and Administration:

   2.1. Physical Residency Requirements:

      a. It is expected that Joint Degree Students will successfully complete all their required courses, their comprehensive examination (if required), and their candidacy exam at their Home Institution before visiting the Collaborating Institution, unless a different set of courses at the other Collaborating Institution is approved by the Joint Degree Student’s supervisory committee.

      b. Joint Degree Students must spend at least six (6) months and a maximum of twelve (12) months at the Host Institution doing research related to their doctoral program, which will be counted toward the residency requirements of their Home Institution. Periods exceeding twelve months must be discussed and mutually agreed upon in writing by both parties.

   2.2. Academic Program Requirements: Joint Degree Students will follow a program of study and research which shall satisfy the degree requirements of their Home Institution.

   2.3. Ethics Requirements: In accordance with UAlberta policy, every Joint Degree Student must meet UAlberta’s ethics and academic integrity training requirements set by the UAlberta Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research. Further information regarding those requirements can be found here: https://uofa.ualberta.ca/graduate-studies/current-students/academic-requirements/ethics. Additionally, Joint Degree Students must follow all UAlberta policies and procedures relating to research involving either human participants or animals. Similarly, every Joint Degree Student must comply with the rules, processes, policies and procedures of IITKGP relating to research. For research involving human or animal subjects, approval from IITKGP’s ethics committee must be secured.

   2.4. Professional Development Requirement: Every Joint Degree Student from UAlberta must meet UAlberta’s professional development requirements set by the UAlberta Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research. Further information regarding those requirements can be found here: https://www.ualberta.ca/graduate-studies/professional-development/professional-development-requirement.

   2.5. Joint Supervision: Every Joint Degree Student must have a supervisor at each institution while in the Joint Degree Program.

   2.6. Doctoral Supervisory Committee: Every Joint Degree Student must have a supervisory committee comprised of at least three members in the case of UAlberta and five members in the case of IITKGP, including the supervisors at both parties. The supervisor of the host institution will be invited to be part of the evaluation committee for the different milestones leading to the degree.

   2.7. Required Examinations:

      a. Doctoral Joint Degree Students whose Home Institution is UAlberta must pass a doctoral candidacy examination in accordance with UAlberta policies before they can proceed to final thesis defense.
b. Joint Degree Students whose Home Institution is IITKGP must clear their comprehensive examination, registration seminar, enhancement seminar (if required), and synopsis seminar before submission and defence of thesis.

c. Every Joint Degree Student must successfully prepare and defend a thesis at their Home Institution before an examining committee that is set up in accordance with the relevant policies of the Home Institution, unless otherwise stated in this Agreement. The supervisor from the Collaborating Institution must be invited to participate in the thesis defense. If they participate, they can do so by teleconference.

• For Joint Degree Students whose home institution is IITKGP, the thesis needs to be evaluated by two external examiners (outside of the Doctoral Supervisory Committee), one within India and one outside of India as per the rules of the Institute.

• For Joint Degree Students whose home institution is UAlberta, the final oral exam committee must consist of the supervisory committee plus two arm’s length examiners, one of whom is a reader or examiner external to the University. Full composition policies are at https://calendar.ualberta.ca/content.php?catoid=29&navoid=7272#size-and-composition-of-examining-committees.
APPENDIX B

INDIVIDUAL STUDENT AGREEMENT
Joint Doctoral Degree Program
between

UNIVERSITY OF ALBERTA
and
INDIAN INSTITUTION OF TECHNOLOGY Kharagpur

1. Contact details
Administrative contact (UAlberta):

Administrative contact (IITKGP):

2. Program
The program allows candidates to undertake a Doctor of Philosophy PhD program jointly provided by two institutions, referred to as the home and host institutions. Candidates participating in the program will be accepted into candidature at both institutions. The majority of the candidature will be spent at the home institution.

3. Candidate details

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Candidate name:</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Candidate email address:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home institution:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host institution:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thesis title:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field of research:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Advisor details

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principal advisor (home institution):</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Associate advisor(s) (home institution):</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principal advisor (host institution):</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Associate advisor(s) (host institution):</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Allocation of time between institutions

The PhD project should be planned for the full time equivalent duration of ___ months to a maximum of ___ months.
The expected periods to be spent at each institution by the Candidate are as follows. These are proposed dates and can be changed by written agreement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Approximate dates located at home institution</th>
<th>Approximate dates located at host institution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Etc</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. **Academic milestones**

The following are the different milestones of the home institutions:

For the Candidate’s whose Home institution is IITKGP:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Milestone at IITKGP</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enrolment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comprehensive Exam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PhD registration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enhancement of scholarship</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thesis synopsis presentation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thesis submission</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thesis defence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the Candidate’s whose Home institution is UAlberta:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Milestone at UAlberta</th>
<th>Equivalent milestone at IITKGP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enrolment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confirmation of Candidature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mid-Candidature Review</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-Completion Evaluation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. **Funding arrangements**

Please list all sources of scholarship/ funds to support the candidate:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provided by home institution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name of scholarship/ fund</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amount of scholarship/ fund</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duration of scholarship/ fund</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Items supported by scholarship/ fund</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(add more rows as necessary)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provided by host institution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name of scholarship/ fund</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amount of scholarship/ fund</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duration of scholarship/ fund</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Items supported by scholarship/ fund</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(add more rows as necessary)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source of fund</th>
<th>Provided by Candidate*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amount of fund</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duration of fund</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Items supported by fund</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(add more rows as necessary)

*Signed undertaking and supporting documents necessary for listing of funds provided by Candidate

**SIGNED FOR AND ON BEHALF OF:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>UAlberta</th>
<th>IITKGP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dean/Provost</td>
<td>Dean, PGS&amp;R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date: <em><strong><strong>/</strong></strong></em>/_____</td>
<td>Date: <em><strong><strong>/</strong></strong></em>/_____</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Witnessed by:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Supervisor</th>
<th>Supervisor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Date: <em><strong><strong>/</strong></strong></em>/_____</td>
<td>Date: <em><strong><strong>/</strong></strong></em>/_____</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Title: | |
|-------| |
| Date: _____/_____/_____ | |
AGREEMENT FOR A JOINT DOCTORAL DEGREE PROGRAM

BETWEEN

INDIAN INSTITUTE OF TECHNOLOGY MADRAS
Located in Chennai, Tamil Nadu, India.
(“IITM”)

AND

THE GOVERNORS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF ALBERTA
As represented by the Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research
Located in Edmonton, Alberta, Canada
(“UAlberta”)

WHEREAS:

A. The parties to this Agreement have entered into a memorandum of understanding (“MoU”) that contemplates various forms of academic cooperation; and

B. The parties wish to formalize the terms for an Agreement under which doctoral students from either party may pursue a Joint Degree Program.

NOW THEREFORE in consideration of the above and other good and valuable consideration, the parties agree as follows:

1. DEFINITIONS

1.1. In this Agreement:

a. “Collaborating Institution” means the institution which is not the Joint Degree Student’s Home Institution.

b. “Joint Degree Program” means a program of study under which students may obtain a doctoral degree from UAlberta OR a doctoral degree from IITM.

- In each instance, the degree will be granted by the Home Institution, and the Home Institution will provide formal recognition of the completion of the Joint Degree Program through a notation on the transcript and on the parchment.
- At UAlberta, participating faculties must first obtain faculty and Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research approval. At UAlberta, the proposed initial participating Faculties are Agricultural, Life and Environmental Sciences (ALES); Engineering; Medicine and Dentistry; Public Health; and Science. Additional faculties may be included by written agreement between the parties.

c. “Joint Degree Student” means a student who is participating in the Joint Degree Program.

d. “Home Institution” means the institution where the student was originally admitted to a doctoral degree program in one of the degree programs contemplated by the Joint Degree Program.
2. **LIAISON OFFICERS**

2.1. Each party shall designate a liaison officer (“Liaison Officer”) who will be responsible for coordinating the specific aspects of the Joint Degree Program as well as advising and assisting students taking part in the Joint Degree Program.

2.2. The designated Liaison Officers for the Agreement are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>for IITM</th>
<th>for UAlberta – General Agreement Matters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Ms. G. R. Kavitha  
General Manager  
Office of International Relations  
2nd Floor, IC& SR bldg.  
IIT Madras  
Chennai - 600036 | Dr. Cen Huang  
Vice-Provost  
and Associate Vice-President (International)  
University of Alberta International  
University of Alberta  
142 Telus Centre  
Edmonton, Alberta T6G 2R3  
Canada |
| Telephone: 0091-44-22574926  
E-mail: oir@iitm.ac.in | Telephone: +1-780-492-0821  
E-mail: cen.huang@ualberta.ca |

2.3. All notices sent pursuant to this Agreement must be sent to the above-mentioned Liaison Officers. The parties agree that either party may change its designated Liaison Officer by notifying the other party in writing of such change.

2.4. Any notice to be given by either party pursuant to this Agreement must be in writing and may be delivered by commercial courier, registered mail (unless a postal strike or other disruption is currently in place), facsimile machine, or e-mail to the relevant Liaison Officer using the contact information set out above (or such other contact information as notified by a party by written notice given in accordance with this clause).

2.5. If a party receives a message that a notice sent to an e-mail address is undeliverable, or that the Liaison Officer is out of the office, or if the party has any other reason to believe that the delivery of a notice was ineffective, then the party will send the notice using a different method.

3. **APPLICATION, SELECTION, AND ADMISSION OF STUDENTS FOR THE JOINT DEGREE PROGRAM**

3.1. A Joint Degree Student must first be admitted into a doctoral degree program at their Home Institution.

3.2. Collaborating professors from UAlberta and IITM will jointly identify research projects for Joint Degree Students to work on as part of their doctoral studies and for which they would be joint supervisors. UAlberta and IITM will develop a process to recruit prospective students to the projects.

3.3. Once connected with a project, the prospective student must present the required application forms and materials to their Home Institution.

a. The current UAlberta forms can be found here: [www.ualberta.ca/graduate-studies/prospective-students/apply-for-admission/shared-credential-applications](http://www.ualberta.ca/graduate-studies/prospective-students/apply-for-admission/shared-credential-applications).

b. The current IITM form can be found here: [https://research.iitm.ac.in/](https://research.iitm.ac.in/)

3.4. If the Home Institution agrees to recommend the student, the forms will be forwarded to that student’s potential supervising professor at the Collaborating Institution by the deadline mutually agreed upon in writing by the Liaison Officers, which will be in alignment with Collaborating Institution’s
procedures.

3.5. The Collaborating Institution will determine at its sole discretion whether to admit the student into the Joint Degree Program and will inform the Home Institution of its decision.

3.6. Each Collaborating Institution will admit up to a maximum of two (2) Joint Degree Students each academic year for the Joint Degree Program. The maximum number of students may be changed by mutual agreement of the parties and must be expressed in writing. While the number of incoming and outgoing Joint Degree Students may not be exactly equal every year, both parties will endeavour to exchange a similar number of Joint Degree Students.

4. JOINT DEGREE PROGRAM REQUIREMENTS AND ADMINISTRATION

4.1. While under the joint supervision of professors from each institution, Joint Degree Students will follow a program of study and research which will satisfy the requirements of their Home Institution, including any requirements for the Joint Degree Program outlined in Section 2 of Appendix A.

4.2. Both parties will provide an adequate orientation as well as ongoing advice and support to the Joint Degree Students. At UAlberta, the host Faculty will take the lead on assisting Joint Degree Students. At IITM, International Relations office together with the concerned faculty will take the lead on assisting Joint Degree Students.

4.3. Either party may, at its sole discretion, require a Joint Degree Student to withdraw from the Joint Degree Program. If required to withdraw from the Joint Degree Program, the student may be able to return to his/her studies at the Home Institution in the same graduate program and would receive appropriate credit for work completed at the Collaborating Institution while in the Joint Degree Program.

4.4. A student may withdraw, at any time, from the Joint Degree Program, and return to his/her studies at the Home Institution. The student will receive appropriate credit for work completed at the Collaborating Institution while in the Joint Degree Program.

4.5. Upon successful completion of the doctoral degree requirements of the Home Institution and any additional requirements for the Joint Degree Program, the Home Institution will confer on the Joint Degree Student the doctoral degree of that Institution for which the student qualifies. The Liaison Officer at the Home Institution shall inform the Liaison Officer at the Collaborating Institution of this award.

4.6. The designations on the Joint Degree Program Student’s academic record will include the following:

   a. The UAlberta transcript notation will read: “Participating in a shared credential program offered jointly by this university and the Indian Institute of Technology Madras.”

   b. The IITM transcript notation will read: “Participating in the Joint Degree Program with University of Alberta.”

   c. The UAlberta parchment notation will read “having completed all the statutory requirements of the program offered jointly by the University of Alberta and the Indian Institute of Technology Madras has been granted the degree of Doctor of Philosophy and awarded all the rights and privileges pertaining to this degree”.

   d. The IITM parchment notation will read: “for successfully completing the prescribed programme for the study jointly with University of Alberta”
5. FEES AND FINANCIAL MATTERS

5.1. The Joint Degree Program uses an exchange model for fees: for the duration of their participation in the Program, Joint Degree Students must pay to their Home Institution full tuition and all other required fees associated with full-time registration in the graduate program to which they have been admitted. Joint Degree Students will pay no application or tuition fees at the Collaborating Institution.

5.2. Other mandatory or non-instructional fees at the Collaborating Institution may require payment.
   a. While resident at UAlberta, all Joint Degree Students must pay non-instructional fees to UAlberta for health and dental coverage (UAHIP) and a public transportation pass (the “U-Pass”).
   b. Where resident at IITM, all Joint Degree Students must pay …

5.3. Joint Degree Students are expected to have sufficient personal funds to cover any and all expenses not covered by either institution as detailed in this Agreement. Such expenses include:
   a. Other non-instructional fees;
   b. Living expenses not covered by the Collaborating Institution while spending time there (health care costs, etc.);
   c. Recreation;
   d. Travel and transportation, including travel insurance;
   e. Text books and school supplies; and
   f. All necessary immigration documents.

5.4. For periods Joint Degree Students from the Collaborating Institution spend at their institution, both parties will provide a doctoral fellowship, through funding from within their own institution and/or from third parties. The fellowship will be at least sufficient to cover accommodation and meals.

5.5. Specific funding arrangements for each Joint Degree Student will be agreed to in a separate written document or documents. At UAlberta, for incoming students, the host department must submit this funding documentation to the Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research along with the admission documentation.

6. HOUSING

Each Institution shall endeavour to provide information to students regarding housing options, the cost of which must be paid by the student.

7. REGULATIONS GOVERNING STUDENTS

7.1. During their participation in the Joint Degree Program, students will be bound by the rules, regulations, and codes of conduct of the university or universities at which they are registered.

7.2. Joint Degree Students will be bound by the laws of the country in which they are resident.

7.3. Notwithstanding section 7.1, both institutions will work collaboratively to resolve any conflicts between Joint Degree Students and their supervisors.

8. INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY

8.1. At the outset of a Joint Degree Student’s program, the parties will work together to establish, in writing, all necessary arrangements regarding the ownership and protection of any intellectual property generated as a result of any research conducted by the Joint Degree Student during the program. In addressing any such intellectual property arrangements, the parties shall involve the Joint Degree
8.2. Notwithstanding anything else in this Agreement, the parties acknowledge that a Joint Degree Student shall own the copyright in his/her thesis.

9. ACCESS TO INFORMATION AND PRIVACY LEGISLATION

9.1. The parties acknowledge that UAlberta is a public body subject to the Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act (Alberta) (“FOIP”), as amended. For further information about FOIP see www.ipo.ualberta.ca and IITM is a Government of India constituted academic institution and subject to the Right to Information Act. The parties agree to only use any personal information exchanged for the purposes of this Agreement for the purposes of administering this Joint Degree Program.

9.2. No personal information related to any Joint Degree Student will be released by UAlberta to IITM without the student’s prior written consent, except as permitted by law. Such consent will be obtained as part of the Shared Credential Initial Approval application form (see www.ualberta.ca/graduate-studies/prospective-students/apply-for-admission/shared-credential-applications) or in such other form as UAlberta may provide from time to time.

10. CONFIDENTIALITY

10.1. Each party who receives any information from the other marked “Confidential” (“Confidential Information”), will take reasonable steps to protect its confidentiality, will not disclose to any third party such Confidential Information without the prior written consent of the other party, and will only use such Confidential Information for the purposes contemplated in this Agreement.

10.2. For the purposes of this Agreement, Confidential Information does not include information (a) that is or becomes part of the public domain through no act of the receiving party, (b) that was in the receiving party’s possession before receipt from the disclosing party, (c) that was rightfully received by the receiving party from a third party without a duty of confidentiality, or (d) that is required to be disclosed under any applicable law or by order of a court.

11. DISPUTE RESOLUTION

Any dispute arising from this Agreement shall be resolved amicably through discussion between the parties’ Liaison Officers. In the event the Liaison Officers are unable to resolve the matter within 60 days of referral, or such additional time as mutually agreed to by the parties, the dispute shall be referred to the Director of IITM and the Provost and Vice-President (Academic) of UAlberta or their respective nominees.

12. INDEMNIFICATION AND LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

Each party ("Indemnifying Party") shall:

a. be liable to the other party ("Indemnified Party") for; and
b. indemnify and hold harmless the Indemnified Party from and against:

any and all liabilities, damages, costs, claims, suits or actions, loss, injury, death, or damage to any third party (including students) occasioned by or as a result of the negligent acts, willful misconduct or breach of obligations assumed under this Agreement by the Indemnifying Party or their employees, officers, agents, and contractors.
Notwithstanding the above, in no event will either party be liable for any indirect, consequential, or incidental claims incurred by any Indemnified Party in respect of this Agreement.

13. **SURVIVAL**

Terms of this Agreement which, by their nature, require the parties’ continued performance after this Agreement’s termination, will continue in effect following any such termination.

14. **COUNTERPARTS**

The parties may sign this Agreement in counterparts, each of which being an original. Such counterparts will together constitute one and the same agreement. Counterparts may be signed either in original or electronic form and the parties shall adopt any signatures received electronically as original signatures of the parties.

15. **GENERAL**

15.1. This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement and understanding between the parties with respect to the Joint Degree Program and replaces all earlier agreements and discussions between the parties. Appendix A, which includes details regarding the Joint Degree Program administration, forms an integral part of this Agreement. Terms regarding individual Joint Degree Students such as funding arrangements, dates of stay at the Host Institution, and the joint research project being undertaken will be set out in a separate written document or documents.

15.2. The invalidity of any particular provision of this Agreement does not affect any other provision of it, but the Agreement is to be construed as if the invalid provision had been omitted.

15.3. Nothing in this Agreement shall make the relationship between the parties one of partnership, joint venture or employment. Nothing in this Agreement constitutes authority for one party to make commitments which bind the other party or to otherwise act on behalf of such other party.

15.4. No part of this Agreement may be assigned by either party without the consent of the other party.

15.5. Neither party will use, nor shall it permit any person employed by it to use, identifying marks of the other party, other than with the written consent of such other party, which may be arbitrarily withheld.

16. **COMING INTO FORCE, TERMINATION, AND AMENDMENTS**

16.1. This Agreement comes into effect on the date on which it has been signed by both parties and will continue in effect for a period of three (3) years or until terminated in accordance with section 16.2.

16.2. The parties may mutually terminate this Agreement by written agreement. Alternatively, either party may terminate this Agreement by giving twelve (12) months’ written notice of termination to the other party.

16.3. If this Agreement is terminated or not renewed, the parties agree that any Joint Degree Students accepted by the Collaborating Institution will be given reasonable time to complete their studies.

16.4. The parties may amend or extend this Agreement by written agreement.
The parties have signed this Agreement on the dates indicated below.

Signed for and on behalf of
INDIAN INSTITUTE OF TECHNOLOGY MADRAS
the____ day of __________ 2019.

________________________
Name

________________________
Title

________________________________________
Prof. A. K. Mishra
Dean of Academic Research

Signed for and on behalf of
THE GOVERNORS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF ALBERTA
the____ day of __________ 2019.

________________________
Dr. David Turpin, CM, LLD, FRSC
President and Vice-Chancellor
APPENDIX A

1. Application, Selection, and Admission of Students:

   1.1. Every Joint Degree Student must meet the normal admission requirements and application
deadlines of both parties for the relevant degree programs.

2. Joint Degree Program Requirements and Administration:

   2.1. Physical Residency Requirements:

       a. It is expected that Joint Degree Students will successfully complete all their required
courses, their comprehensive examination (if required), and their candidacy exam at their
Home Institution before visiting the Collaborating Institution, unless a different set of courses
at the other Collaborating Institution is approved by the Joint Degree Student’s supervisory
committee.

       b. Joint Degree Students must spend at least six (6) months and a maximum of twelve (12)
months at the Collaborating Institution doing research related to their doctoral program,
which will be counted toward the residency requirements of their Home Institution. Periods
exceeding twelve months must be discussed and mutually agreed upon in writing by both
parties.

   2.2. Academic Program Requirements: Joint Degree Students will follow a program of study and
research which shall satisfy the degree requirements of their Home Institution.

   2.3. Ethics Requirements: In accordance with UAlberta policy, every Joint Degree Student must meet
UAlberta’s ethics and academic integrity training requirements set by the UAlberta Faculty of
Graduate Studies and Research. Further information regarding those requirements can be found
here: https://uofa.ualberta.ca/graduate-studies/current-students/academic-requirements/ethics.
Additionally, Joint Degree Students must follow all UAlberta policies and procedures relating to
research involving either human participants or animals.

   2.3.2. Professional Development Requirement: Every Joint Degree Student from UAlberta
must meet UAlberta’s professional development requirements set by the UAlberta Faculty of
Graduate Studies and Research. Further information regarding those requirements can be found
here: https://www.ualberta.ca/graduate-studies/professional-development/professional-
development-requirement.

   2.4. Joint Supervision: Every Joint Degree Student must have a supervisor at each institution
while in the Joint Degree Program.

   2.5. Doctoral Supervisory Committee: Every Joint Degree Student must have a supervisory
committee comprised of at least three members, including the supervisors at both parties.

   2.6. Required Examinations:

       a. Doctoral Joint Degree Students whose Home Institution is UAlberta must pass a doctoral
 candidacy examination in accordance with UAlberta policies before they can proceed to final
thesis defense.

       b. Joint Degree Students whose Home Institution is Acronym must **
c. Every Joint Degree Student must successfully prepare and defend a thesis at their Home Institution before an examining committee that is set up in accordance with the relevant policies of the Home Institution, unless otherwise stated in this Agreement. The supervisor from the Collaborating Institution must be invited to participate in the thesis defense. If they participate, they can do so by teleconference.
Governance Executive Summary
Action Item

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agenda Title</th>
<th>Proposed Terms of Reference for the Academic Planning Committee Working Group on the Facilitation of Clinical Research</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Motion

THAT the GFC Academic Planning Committee establish a Working Group on the Facilitation of Clinical Research and approve the attached Terms of Reference.

Item

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action Requested</th>
<th>☒ Approval</th>
<th>☐ Recommendation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposed by</td>
<td>Steve Dew, Provost and Vice-President (Academic)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presenter(s)</td>
<td>Matthias Ruth, Vice-President (Research and Innovation) and Alex Clark, Associate Vice-President (Research)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Details

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Responsibility</th>
<th>Vice-President (Research and Innovation)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Purpose of the Proposal is (please be specific)</td>
<td>The proposal is before the committee to recommend establishing a working group focused on the facilitation of clinical research that will explore perceived and/or real current challenges related to undertaking clinical research at the University of Alberta, and bring its findings and recommendations to APC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executive Summary (outline the specific item – and remember your audience)</td>
<td>In July 2019, a member of GFC raised a number of concerns related to undertaking clinical research at the University of Alberta, and the matter was referred to GFC Executive and discussed at its meeting on 7 October. Executive agreed that a working group on the facilitation of clinical research be established and report its findings to APC. The working group will examine a number of real and/or perceived challenges and issues related to undertaking clinical research, including, for example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Access to Electronic Medical Records (EMR), which is a system owned and governed by Alberta Health Services (AHS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Privacy issues related to EMR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Criminal Checks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Signature requirements for grant applications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Restrictions on hours for casual hires</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>One group that will be consulted is the Clinical Trials Advisory Committee in the Faculty of Medicine &amp; Dentistry, led by Neesh Pannu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Immediate risks for each item appear to be minimal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>There would be sizable and ongoing financial costs if all University of Alberta staff were required to obtain recent and ongoing criminal checks in order to do clinical research.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supplementary Notes and context</td>
<td>A GFC member’s written concerns and a written response were included in the September 23, 2019, GFC agenda. At that time, GFC referred the matter to GFC Executive Committee for consideration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Item No. 8

**Engagement and Routing** *(Include meeting dates)*

| Consultation and Stakeholder Participation *(parties who have seen the proposal and in what capacity)* | **Those who are actively participating:**  
*GFC Academic Planning Committee*  
**Those who have been consulted:**  
*GFC Executive Committee*  
*Vice Dean Research, Faculty of Medicine & Dentistry*  
*Director, Northern Alberta Clinical Trials and Research Centre (NACTRC)*  
**Those who have been informed:**  
*Vice-President (Research and Innovation)*  
*GFC – 21 October* |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;For information on the protocol see the Governance Resources section Student Participation Protocol&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approval Route <em>(Governance)</em> <em>(including meeting dates)</em></td>
<td>GFC APC – 23 October 2019</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Strategic Alignment

**Alignment with For the Public Good**

The activities of the working group will support:

- **Objective 11** - Advance the University of Alberta’s reputation for research excellence by pursuing fundamental and original questions and ideas, pushing the frontiers of knowledge, inspiring creative experimentation, driving innovation, and advancing society; Strategies i (Encourage and champion achievements in a broad base of fundamental and applied research, scholarship, and creative activities) and ii (Support a culture of creativity, innovation, and entrepreneurship among students, faculty, and staff where contributions to all sectors of society are rewarded, valued, and celebrated)

- **Objective 13** - Enable University of Alberta researchers to succeed and excel; Strategy i (Expand services and supports for researchers at all career stages (undergraduate and graduate students, post-doctoral fellows, and faculty), including the development of research mentorship and Grant Assist programs).

**Alignment with Core Risk Area**

Please note below the specific institutional risk(s) this proposal is addressing:

- [ ] Enrolment Management  
- ✔️ Faculty and Staff  
- [ ] Funding and Resource Management  
- [ ] IT Services, Software and Hardware  
- [ ] Leadership and Change  
- [ ] Physical Infrastructure  
- ✔️ Relationship with Stakeholders  
- ✔️ Reputation  
- ✔️ Research Enterprise  
- ✔️ Safety  
- [ ] Student Success

**Legislative Compliance and Jurisdiction**

- Post-Secondary Learning Act  
- GFC Academic Planning Committee Terms of Reference

---

1. Attachment 1 (pages 1 - 2) – GFC Academic Planning Committee Working Group on Facilitation of Clinical Research

*Prepared by:* Katharine Moore, Office of the Vice-President (Research and Innovation),  
katharine.moore@ualberta.ca
GFC Academic Planning Committee Working Group on Facilitation of Clinical Research

**Purpose:**

To explore current issues and challenges, both real and perceived, related to undertaking clinical research at the University of Alberta, and to bring its findings and recommendations to APC.

**Suggested Composition:**

Alex Clark, Associate Vice-President (Research), Co-Chair

Lawrence Richer, Associate Dean (Clinical and Translational Research), Faculty of Medicine & Dentistry, and Director of the Northern Alberta Clinical Trials and Research Centre (NACTRC), Co-Chair

Ayman El-Kadi, Associate Dean (Research), Faculty of Pharmacy and Pharmaceutical Sciences

Dilini Vethanayagam, GFC Member, Faculty of Medicine & Dentistry

Alan Underhill, GFC Member, Faculty of Medicine & Dentistry

One undergraduate student from a health Faculty other than Medicine & Dentistry who is involved in clinical research

One graduate student from a health Faculty other than Medicine & Dentistry who is involved in clinical research

The working group committee may add to its membership as it deems necessary. Resource members may join the working group temporarily to address specific issues.

Administrative support for the working group will be supplied by NACTRC.

**Meetings:**

The working group will meet at least once a month.

Guests will be invited to attend meetings as required. Other consultation activities will be determined by the working group and carried out between meetings.
Terms of Reference:

The working group will examine a number of real and/or perceived issues and challenges that have been identified related to undertaking clinical research. As a starting point, these may include:

- Access to Electronic Medical Records (EMR)
- Privacy Issues related to EMR
- Signature requirements for grant applications
- Restrictions on hours for casual hires

Timeline:

The working group’s findings and recommendations will be submitted to APC no later than 28 February 2020.
Item No. 9

Governance Executive Summary
Action Item

| Agenda Title                                                                 | Student Financial Support Policy Suite and Rescission of the Awards and Bursaries for Students Policy Suite |

**Motion**

THAT the GFC Academic Planning Committee recommend that General Faculties Council approve the new Student Financial Support Policy Suite, as set forth in Attachments 2, 3, 4 and 5, and the concurrent rescission of the existing Awards and Bursaries for Students Policy Suite in UAPPOL, as recommended by the GFC Undergraduate Awards and Bursaries Committee to take effect upon final approval.

**Item**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action Requested</th>
<th>☐ Approval  ☒ Recommendation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposed by</td>
<td>Melissa Padfield, Interim Vice-Provost and University Registrar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presenter(s)</td>
<td>Melissa Padfield, Interim Vice-Provost and University Registrar</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Details**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Responsibility</th>
<th>Provost and Vice-President (Academic)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Purpose of the Proposal is</td>
<td>The proposal is before the committee to recommend approval of the new Student Financial Support Policy Suite, and the rescission of the existing Awards and Bursaries for Students Policy Suite in UAPPOL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(please be specific)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executive Summary</td>
<td>The Office of the Registrar, in consultation with the several stakeholder groups, has developed a new Student Financial Support Policy Suite to replace the existing Awards and Bursaries for Students Policy and its procedures in UAPPOL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(outline the specific item – and</td>
<td>The purpose of the revisions to the policy and procedures is to:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remember your audience)</td>
<td>• Create alignment between institutional commitment with administrative practice;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Reflect current practices, authorities, and roles;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Be inclusive of graduate student financial support; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Allow the University to be agile and adaptive to changes in the post-secondary, provincial, and global environments.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Supplementary Notes and context**

<This section is for use by University Governance only to outline governance process.>

**Engagement and Routing (Include meeting dates)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Consultation and Stakeholder Participation (parties who have seen the proposal and in what capacity)</th>
<th>Those who are actively participating:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;For information on the protocol see the Governance Resources section Student Participation Protocol&gt;</td>
<td>• The Office of the Provost and Vice-President (Academic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research (FGSR)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The Office of the Registrar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Those who have been consulted:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Office of the Provost and Vice-President (Academic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research (FGSR)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• University Governance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Office of Advancement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Students’ Union (SU)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Graduate Students’ Association (GSA)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Scholarship Network</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For the Meeting of October 23, 2019

Item No. 9

- GFC UASC Chair Dr. Frank Robinson
- Dean of Students Dr. Andre Costopoulos
- Advisory Committee on Undergraduate Financial Support (ACUS)
- Vice-Provosts’ Council (VPC)
- Undergraduate Awards and Scholarship Committee (UABC)
- Committee on Student Affairs (COSA)
- Deans’ Council
- PEC-O

**Those who have been informed:**

- 

| Approval Route (Governance) (including meeting dates) | Undergraduate Awards and Scholarship Committee (UABC) October 8, 2019  
GFC Academic Planning Committee October 23, 2019  
GFC Executive Committee November 4, 2019  
General Faculties Committee November 25, 2019  
Board Learning, Research and Student Experience Committee (BLRSEC) November 29, 2019  
Board of Governors December 13, 2019 |

**Strategic Alignment**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alignment with <em>For the Public Good</em></th>
<th>Please note the Institutional Strategic Plan objective(s)/strategies the proposal supports.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alignment with Core Risk Area</td>
<td>Please note below the specific institutional risk(s) this proposal is addressing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Enrolment Management</td>
<td>☒ Relationship with Stakeholders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Faculty and Staff</td>
<td>☒ Reputation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☒ Funding and Resource Management</td>
<td>☐ Research Enterprise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ IT Services, Software and Hardware</td>
<td>☐ Safety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ Leadership and Change</td>
<td>☒ Student Success</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ Physical Infrastructure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Legislative Compliance and jurisdiction | Post-secondary Learning Act  
GFC Terms of Reference  
GFC UABC Terms of Reference  
GFC APC Terms of Reference |

**Attachments**

1. Attachment 1 Case for Action (pages 1 - 5)
2. Attachment 2 Proposed Student Financial Support Policy (pages 1 - 3)
3. Attachment 3 Proposed Creation of New Student Financial Support Procedure (pages 1 - 4)
4. Attachment 4 Proposed Undergraduate Student Financial Support Procedure (pages 1 - 6)
5. Attachment 5 Proposed Graduate Student Financial Supports Procedure (pages 1 - 6)

Prepared by: Fiona Halbert, Assistant Registrar Student Financial Support, [Fiona.halbert@ualberta.ca](mailto:Fiona.halbert@ualberta.ca)
Case for Action: New Student Financial Support Policy Suite (and rescission of the Awards and Bursaries for Students Policy)

Context:

The current Awards and Bursaries for Students Policy Suite was established in 2011 when Section 21 of the GFC Policy Manual was rescinded and placed into UAPPOL. Aside from reorganization of information contained within Section 21 and minor updates to reflect the current practices at the time, the policy and four procedures were primarily direct extrapolations from Section 21.

The existing policy suite only promises that the University will "marshal awards and bursaries for students to support learning and alleviate financial need to the extent that financial resources permit" but stops short of meeting an important institutional goal outlined within For the Public Good, (Build, Strategy 4), to "Ensure that qualified undergraduate and graduate students can attend the university through the provision of robust student financial support."

The lack of a statement of specific institutional goals within the existing policy suite poses several challenges when questions around how allocation of new and existing funds should be managed. This foundation is also necessary in order to support the fundraising goals of the University of Alberta.

In addition, the existing policy suite is silent on the role of graduate student financial support and the role of the Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research in student financial support.

The existing policy suite is also out of alignment with the stated goals of the President of the University of Alberta, Dr. David Turpin, and his colleagues in the Council of Post-secondary Presidents of Alberta (COPPOA). In a recent and widely distributed position paper1, COPPOA confirmed that student financial support has never been more both necessary and relevant than it is today in Alberta. The University of Alberta is fundamental to building Alberta’s future, but access to post-secondary education for society’s most vulnerable learners remains a real threat.

Over the past ten months, members of the Office of the Provost and Vice-President (Academic), the Office of the Registrar, the Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research (FGSR) and the Office of Advancement have conducted a thorough review of the policy and the four procedures, and drafted an updated UAPPOL Student Financial Support Policy Suite. The proposed suite aligns with the current financial support administrative priorities and processes, clarifies authorities and roles, and allows the university to be agile and adaptive to changes in the post-secondary, provincial and global environments (see Appendix A - Overview of Changes).

A recent report from an external consultant commissioned by the Office of the Vice-Provost and University Registrar identified policy development as a primary recommendation. The report identified the need for policy statements that would provide a foundation for decision-making, align with enrolment management and recruitment goals, and would update existing out-of-date UAPPOL policy and procedures. This proposed student financial support policy suite directly addresses the need for the alignment of policy to fundamental institutional goals and delineates the foundations for decision making.

---

1 Post-secondary Education Position Paper, The Council of Post-secondary Presidents of Alberta (COPPOA)
Key Changes:

- The proposed policy contains language reflective of the University’s commitment to providing and optimizing robust student financial supports in order to ensure that academically qualified students can attend the University.

- The proposed policy suite includes usage of an industry-standard umbrella term “student financial support” intended to represent the whole range of student financial support normally available to post-secondary learners.

- The proposed policy suite now contains a procedure dedicated to graduate student financial support.

- The proposed policy suite has been streamlined into three areas intended to outline the process of the creation of student financial support, as well as the processes relevant to the administration and approval of separate undergraduate and graduate student financial support.

- The proposed procedures have been drafted retaining relevant and accurate pieces of the current suite of procedures, and have been adjusted to reflect current practices, authorities, and roles.

Desired Outcomes:

- Alignment between the University of Alberta’s policies and procedures around student financial support and institutional goals.

- Mitigation of the current risks surrounding student success, as identified by the 2018-2019 Institutional Risk Summary, which include: reduced student success, harm to reputation, reduced ability to recruit, misalignment with Government expectations, and failure of the university mission.

- Establishment of an updated institutional policy and suite of procedures that are easy to understand, transparent, and outline clear authorities and roles.

- Establishment of an updated institutional policy and suite of procedures that reflect accepted administrative and academic processes.

- Revised institutional policy and procedures that allow the University to be agile and adaptive to changes in the post-secondary, provincial and global environments.

- Better alignment between the Board of Governors, General Faculties Council, the Office of the Vice-Provost and University Registrar, the Office of Advancement, individual Faculties, and the Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research to provide, support, and administer student financial supports at the University of Alberta.
Appendix A - Overview of Changes

UAPPOL Creation of New Student Financial Support Procedure

The Creation of New Student Financial Support Procedure now informs how both undergraduate and graduate new student financial supports are created (previously, this procedure only referenced undergraduate awards and bursaries).

The scope of this procedure has been refined to include only the creation of new supports and clarifies the authorities, roles and responsibilities of the Office of the Registrar, Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research, the Office of Advancement, the GFC Undergraduate Awards and Bursaries Committee (UABC) and the Graduate Scholarship Committee (GSC).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section Name</th>
<th>Key Changes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. ADMINISTRATION (new section)</td>
<td>The section now outlines how new undergraduate and graduate student financial supports are created and the roles of the Office of the Registrar, Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research, the Office of Advancement, the GFC Undergraduate Awards and Bursaries Committee (UABC) and the Graduate Scholarship Committee (GSC) in the creation of new financial supports.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. RESTRICTIONS ON RECIPIENT SELECTION</td>
<td>Minor edits were made to clarify language, but overall content is unchanged.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 3. INCLUSIVITY IN SELECTION CRITERIA | ● An inclusivity statement was added to support the creation of broad terms of reference that aid annual selection for the student financial support.  
● The Office of Safe Disclosure & Human Rights was consulted to update language on section 3A. HUMAN RIGHTS.  
● 3B. MEMBERSHIP: minor updates to sanctioned groups, but overall content is unchanged. |
| 4. APPROVAL | ● 4A. TERMS OF REFERENCE: added a statement that terms of reference once approved may not be changed by the donor. This is to provide clarity for donors when frontline fundraisers are engaging with them.  
● Detailed procedures related to existing terms of reference have been moved to the Undergraduate Student Financial Support Procedure.  
● 4B. MINIMUM VALUES: amended to focus on the requirements for the minimum value of a new student financial support. |
| 5. ANNUAL SPENDING (new section) | This section outlines the general spending practices for new student financial supports, providing a framework and reference point for frontline fundraisers and donors. |
UAPPOL Undergraduate Student Financial Support Procedure

The Undergraduate Student Financial Support Procedure amalgamates three existing procedures (Awards for Undergraduate Student Procedure, University Medal Requirements Procedure, and Bursaries for Students Procedure) into a single document that outlines the administrative processes for undergraduate student financial supports.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section Name</th>
<th>Key Changes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1. ADMINISTRATION                                 | ● The section outlines the roles of the Office of the Registrar, faculties / departments / units and the Office of Advancement in the administration of undergraduate student financial supports.  
● The section speaks to a collaborative process for administration, specifically when dealing with restrictive terms of reference. |
| 2. MAINTENANCE OF TERMS OF REFERENCE FOR STUDENT FINANCIAL SUPPORTS | ● The section refers to the process for amending existing student financial supports, including the roles of the Office of the Registrar and the Office of Advancement (moved from the former Creation of New Awards and Bursaries Procedure).  
● 2C. ANNUAL VALUE SETTING: outlines the roles of the units in setting the annual value of undergraduate student financial supports, providing transparency of authority and demonstrating our commitment to being responsible stewards of donor and university resources. |
| 3. MERIT-BASED STUDENT FINANCIAL SUPPORTS         | ● 3B. ELIGIBILITY: increased flexibility in recipient selection by removing references to full normal course load that previously imposed restrictions on nominating units.  
● 3E. ACADEMIC TRANSCRIPT: section has been changed to state that all merit-based student financial supports will appear on the academic transcript (need-based and hybrid awards will not). |
| 4. NEED-BASED STUDENT FINANCIAL SUPPORTS          | ● The details of the administrative processes for need-based student financial supports have been significantly expanded to create greater transparency.  
● 4B. ELIGIBILITY: provides details about the common assessment practice and the guidelines used to determine the size of a financial shortfall. |
<p>| 5. HYBRID AWARDS                                  | ● The concept of hybrid awards is new, replacing the previous procedures for support where demonstrated financial need was a secondary criteria for awards. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>6. ANNUAL REPORTING</th>
<th>This section outlines the Office of the Registrar’s commitment to annual reporting of undergraduate student financial supports.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- The section addresses longstanding concerns about inconsistency in the assessment of financial need for awards with both merit and need components within different nominating units across the university. Financial need will now be evaluated through a common assessment practice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- The section addresses need and merit components (and secondary requirements) to best fit the intent of the financial support.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- The addition of this section addresses a fundraising gap identified by the Office of Advancement as donors have shown high interest in funding this type of student financial support.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Student Financial Supports Policy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Office of Accountability:</th>
<th>Provost and Vice-President (Academic)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Office of Administrative Responsibility:</td>
<td>Office of the Registrar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Office of Advancement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approver:</td>
<td>Board of Governors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope:</td>
<td>Compliance with this University policy extends to all academic, support and excluded staff, postdoctoral fellows, and academic colleagues as outlined and defined in the Recruitment Policy <a href="https://policiesonline.ualberta.ca/policiesprocedures/policies/recruitment-policy.pdf">https://policiesonline.ualberta.ca/policiesprocedures/policies/recruitment-policy.pdf</a> (Appendix A <a href="https://policiesonline.ualberta.ca/PoliciesProcedures/Procedures/Recruitment-Policy-Appendix-A-Definition-and-Categories-of-Academic-Staff-Administrators-and-Colleagues.pdf">https://policiesonline.ualberta.ca/PoliciesProcedures/Procedures/Recruitment-Policy-Appendix-A-Definition-and-Categories-of-Academic-Staff-Administrators-and-Colleagues.pdf</a>) and Appendix B <a href="https://policiesonline.ualberta.ca/policiesprocedures/procedures/recruitment-policy-appendix-b-definition-and-categories-of-support-staff.pdf">https://policiesonline.ualberta.ca/policiesprocedures/procedures/recruitment-policy-appendix-b-definition-and-categories-of-support-staff.pdf</a>: Definitions and Categories); undergraduate, graduate and Faculty of Extension students; emeriti; members of the Board of Governors; visitors to campus, including visiting speakers and scholars; third party contractors; and volunteers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Overview

The Post-Secondary Learning Act of Alberta gives the Board of Governors authority to “manage and operate the public post-secondary institution in accordance with its mandate,” and to “develop, manage and operate, alone or in co-operation with any person or organization, programs, services and facilities for the economic prosperity of Alberta and for the educational or cultural advancement of the people of Alberta,” (section 60(1)(a) and (b)).

The Post-Secondary Learning Act of Alberta gives GFC responsibility, subject to the authority of the Board of Governors, over “rules and regulations respecting academic awards” (section 26(1)(m)).

GFC has delegated responsibility for graduate awards to the Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research Council (FGSR).

Purpose

To articulate the University’s position on student financial supports for the institution.
U of A Policies and Procedures On-Line (UAPPOL)

POLICY
The University of Alberta is committed to providing and optimizing robust student financial supports, in order to ensure
that academically qualified students can attend the university. These student financial supports will align with
institutional priorities and values, including those outlined in the institutional strategic plan. The University recognizes
that access to affordable education is a shared responsibility between the University, the student, and government.
The associated procedures outline how the University will ensure that its responsibilities to all stakeholders, including
students, government, and donors, are met.

DEFINITIONS
Any definitions listed in the following table apply to this document only with no implied or intended
institution-wide use. [▲Top]
Student Financial Supports

Student financial supports are items of monetary and/or other value
awarded to a student by the University of Alberta or by donors through
the University on the basis of completion of requirements outlined in the
selection criteria or terms of reference.
Merit-based student financial supports include, but are not limited to,
awards, scholarships, prizes, and University medals. Merit-based
financial supports are competitive; successful completion of the
requirements does not guarantee receipt of the funding.
Need-based student financial supports include, but are not limited to,
bursaries loans, and emergency funding.
Hybrid awards require academic performance and demonstrated
financial need, and will be titled as “Awards”.

Student

An individual currently enrolled (full-time or part-time) in undergraduate
or graduate studies.

Government

The government representing a jurisdiction and associated
governmental agencies tasked with administering student financial
supports.

Donor

An individual or organization who makes a charitable donation to the
University of Alberta. A charitable donation is a voluntary transfer of
property with intent to donate and without benefit or advantage to the
donor. Charitable donations can include gifts-in-kind.

RELATED LINKS
Should a link fail, please contact uappol@ualberta.ca. [▲Top]
Office of the Provost and Vice-President (Academic) (University of Alberta)
Office of the Registrar (University of Alberta)
Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research (University of Alberta)
University Governance (University of Alberta)
Financial Management and Practices Policy (University of Alberta)
Strategic Plan for Equity, Diversity, and Inclusivity (University of Alberta)

199


PUBLISHED PROCEDURES OF THIS POLICY
Undergraduate Student Financial Supports Procedure
Graduate Student Financial Supports Procedure
Creation of New Student Financial Supports Procedure
Policies and Procedures On-Line (UAPPOL)

Parent Policy: Student Financial Supports Policy

**Creation of New Student Financial Supports Procedure**

| Office of Administrative Responsibility: | Office of the Registrar  
|  | Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research  
|  | Office of Advancement |
| Approver: | General Faculties Council |
| **Scope:** | Compliance with this University policy extends to all academic, support and excluded staff, postdoctoral fellows, and academic colleagues as outlined and defined in the Recruitment Policy <https://policiesonline.ualberta.ca/policiesprocedures/policies/recruitment-policy.pdf> (Appendix A <https://policiesonline.ualberta.ca/PoliciesProcedures/Procedures/Recruitment-Policy-Appendix-A-Definition-and-Categories-of-Academic-Staff-Administrators-and-Colleagues.pdf>) and Appendix B <https://policiesonline.ualberta.ca/policiesprocedures/procedures/recruitment-policy-appendix-b-definition-and-categories-of-support-staff.pdf>: Definitions and Categories); undergraduate, graduate and Faculty of Extension students; emeriti; members of the Board of Governors; visitors to campus, including visiting speakers and scholars; third party contractors; and volunteers. |

**Purpose**

To provide the procedure by which new **student financial supports** at the University of Alberta are created.

**PROCEDURE**

1. **ADMINISTRATION**

The Office of Advancement will work with donors to establish student financial supports for academically qualified students.

The Office of Advancement will engage with the Office of the Registrar (RO) and/or the Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research (FGSR), as appropriate, to draft terms of reference. The RO and/or the FGSR will provide recommendations and will consult with Faculties, departments and administrative units on campus as necessary when drafting terms of reference. The RO and FGSR seek to establish terms of reference for student financial supports that include selection criteria that support a diverse pool of eligible applicants. The selection criteria must be sufficiently broad to allow the university to award the funds every year.

Faculties, departments and other administrative units will be consulted to provide advice and to ensure proper application and selection supports are in place during the creation of a new student financial support.

The RO and FGSR will facilitate the approval process for new student financial supports with the appropriate governance committee. New undergraduate scholarships, awards, medals, bursaries and prizes are approved by the GFC Undergraduate Awards and Bursaries Committee (UABC). New graduate scholarships and fellowships, awards, prizes, medals, and bursaries are approved by the Graduate Scholarship Committee (GSC) in FGSR.

Terms of reference and selection criteria drafted and approved prior to this procedure are not precedent for new financial supports.

2. **RESTRICTIONS ON RECIPIENT SELECTION**
Donors to the University of Alberta or their agents cannot be the nominator or participate in the recipient selection process for student financial supports for which they are the donor.

3. INCLUSIVITY IN SELECTION CRITERIA

The University of Alberta seeks to demonstrate the values of equity, diversity, and inclusivity in the creation and administration of its student financial supports. This is achieved through establishing new student financial supports that include selection criteria that support a diverse pool of eligible applicants. The selection criteria must be sufficiently broad to allow the university to award the funds every year.

A. HUMAN RIGHTS

Selection or eligibility criteria will not include any criterion defined as discriminatory under the Alberta Human Rights Act or the University of Alberta Discrimination and Harassment and Duty to Accommodate Policy unless the financial supports or the condition at the time of establishment could reasonably be viewed as justifiable discrimination intended to create equity for any equity seeking group (as identified in the protected grounds definition of the Discrimination, Harassment and Duty to Accommodate policy).

If the student financial support is accepted under this provision, it will be reviewed at intervals not greater than 15 years by the Office of the Registrar and / or the Graduate Scholarship Committee and brought to the appropriate authority for consideration. The restriction will be dropped if the group is no longer reasonably perceived as disadvantaged. A specific student financial support can be reviewed at any time by a Faculty or the Office of the Registrar and / or the Graduate Scholarship Committee.

B. MEMBERSHIP

Membership in a particular association cannot be a selection criteria requirement with the exception of:

1. Teams at the University of Alberta sanctioned by the University Sports (U Sports) and/or the Canadian Colleges Athletic Association (CCAA) and the Alberta Colleges Athletic Conference (ACAC).

2. Student groups registered at the University of Alberta overseen by the Dean of Students that
   a. conform with University of Alberta mission, values and policies;
   b. have clear and transparent membership criteria;
   c. are without sanction or are not facing disciplinary action by the University at the time of creation of the student financial support; and
   d. are without sanction or are not facing disciplinary action by the University at the time of administration of the student financial support.

4. APPROVAL

A. TERMS OF REFERENCE

The terms of reference established for student financial supports represent a formal agreement between the donor and the University of Alberta.

Descriptions for new student financial supports submitted for approval must include general selection and eligibility criteria.

Each new student financial support will be considered on its own merits. Terms of reference for all new undergraduate scholarships, awards, prizes, University medals, and bursaries are referred to the GFC UABC for approval.

Terms of reference for new graduate scholarships and fellowships, awards, prizes, medals, and bursaries are referred to the Graduate Scholarship Committee (GSC) in FGSR for approval.

If in the future it becomes necessary, advisable, or preferable for changes to be made to the approved terms, in doing so, the University will remain governed by the original intent as expressed at the time of the creation of this award.

B. MINIMUM VALUES
Policies and Procedures On-Line (UAPPOL)

Minimum values for new annually funded undergraduate student financial supports are approved by GFC UABC.

Minimum values for new annually funded graduate student financial supports are approved by the GSC.

5. ANNUAL SPENDING

In any given year, if invested funds do not provide sufficient income to disburse an endowed student financial support, payment of the student financial support may be reduced or withheld until sufficient funds accrue. The University reserves the right to withhold student financial supports donated by individuals or organizations where the required funds have not yet been received by the University.

DEFINITIONS

Any definitions listed in the following table apply to this document only with no implied or intended institution-wide use. [▲Top]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Student Financial Supports</th>
<th>Student financial supports are items of monetary and/or other value awarded to a student by the University of Alberta or by donors through the University on the basis of completion of requirements outlined in the selection criteria or terms of reference. Merit-based student financial supports include, but are not limited to, awards, scholarships, prizes, and University medals. Merit-based financial supports are competitive; successful completion of the requirements does not guarantee receipt of the funding. Need-based student financial supports include, but are not limited to, bursaries, loans, and emergency funding. Hybrid awards require academic performance and demonstrated financial need, and will be titled as “Awards”.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Donor</td>
<td>An individual or organization who makes a charitable donation to the University of Alberta. A charitable donation is a voluntary transfer of property with intent to donate and without benefit or advantage to the donor. Charitable donations can include gifts-in-kind.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominator</td>
<td>A nominator is the individual or group (i.e., committee) responsible for selecting the recipient(s) of an award or bursary and must not be a person or group external to the University of Alberta.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selection and Eligibility Criteria</td>
<td>Selection and eligibility criteria are the standards or conditions by which a student qualifies and is chosen to receive a financial support. Criteria may be defined in such areas as academic performance, leadership, community service, athletics, or demonstrated financial need.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terms of Reference</td>
<td>The terms of reference of a student financial support provide all relevant information regarding how the student financial support will be dispersed, including the financial terms, the selection and eligibility criteria, and any other information pertinent to the administration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scholarship</td>
<td>A scholarship is a student financial support given to a student on the basis of overall superior academic achievement in a Faculty, Department, or degree program. Secondary selection criteria may also be used. A degree program may be defined as a full multi-year degree program within a Faculty or Department, or as one or more specific years within a full multi-year degree program.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Policies and Procedures On-Line (UAPPOL)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Award</th>
<th>An award is a student financial support that does not meet the definitions for scholarships, prizes or University medals and has as its primary criterion satisfactory academic performance.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prize</td>
<td>A prize is a student financial support given to a student on the basis of superior academic achievement in a course or specific set of courses in a Faculty, Department, or in some other subdivision of a Faculty. Additional non-academic secondary selection criteria may also be used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>University Medal</td>
<td>A University medal is a student financial support is given to a student on the basis of overall superior academic achievement in a Faculty, Department or some other subdivision of a Faculty, or in the University overall. Additional selection criteria will not normally be used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bursary</td>
<td>A bursary is a student financial support given to a student primarily on the basis of demonstrated financial need.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### FORMS

There are no forms for this Procedure. [▲ Top]

### RELATED LINKS

Should a link fail, please contact uappol@ualberta.ca. [▲ Top]

- [Discrimination, Harassment and Duty to Accommodate Policy](https://www.ualberta.ca/uappol/policies/discrimination-harassment-duty-accommodate-policy) (UAPPOL)
- [Strategic Plan for Equity, Diversity, and Inclusivity](https://www.ualberta.ca/uappol/policies/strategic-plan-equity-diversity-inclusivity) (University of Alberta)
- [Office of the Registrar](https://www.ualberta.ca/uappol/policies/office-registrar) (University of Alberta)
- [Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research](https://www.ualberta.ca/uappol/policies/faculty-graduate-studies-research) (University of Alberta)
Purpose
To provide information about undergraduate student financial supports at the University of Alberta.

The purpose of this procedure is to ensure consistency in fundamental financial support practices and procedures across the institution, while allowing academic units sufficient flexibility to administer their financial supports in a manner appropriate to their individual needs and objectives and in alignment with institutional objectives.

PROCEDURE
1. ADMINISTRATION

Merit-based student financial supports are normally administered by the Office of the Registrar (RO) as specified in the terms of reference of the financial supports. Some recipients for merit-based student financial supports are nominated to the Office of the Registrar by Faculties, departments or groups on campus as specified in the terms of reference.

Need-based student financial supports are normally administered by the RO as specified in the terms of reference of the need-based financial support.

Hybrid awards are normally administered by the RO as specified in the terms of reference of the hybrid awards. Some recipients for hybrid awards are nominated to the Office of the Registrar by Faculties, departments or groups on campus as specified in the terms of reference.
The RO will communicate with the Office of Advancement on recipient selection for donor funded student financial supports. The RO and Office of Advancement will work collaboratively to ensure administrative procedures align with the original purpose of the financial support.

Faculties, Departments and other administrative units who are responsible for nominating recipients to the RO will administer selection practices that meet the eligibility and selection criteria outlined in the terms of reference of the financial support. Nominating units will inform the RO when they have identified that selection criteria no longer support a diverse pool of eligible applicants or become too restrictive to allow the university to award the funds every year. The RO will work with the nominating unit and the Office of Advancement to explore options for changing the selection criteria to address the limitations.

The RO will coordinate with Financial Services as necessary to ensure proper financial management and disbursement of student financial supports.

2. MAINTENANCE OF TERMS OF REFERENCE FOR STUDENT FINANCIAL SUPPORTS

A. GENERAL ELIGIBILITY

Student financial supports are tenable only at the University of Alberta unless otherwise stated in terms of reference. Student financial supports specific to a particular Faculty are generally tenable only in that Faculty.

B. AMENDING TERMS OF REFERENCE

When terms of reference can no longer be satisfied, the University may amend the terms to best meet the original purpose of the financial support, while still ensuring that the benefit of such financial supports continues. For example, amendments to existing terms of reference may be necessary when there are no longer eligible students due to changes in University programming. Amendments to the general selection and eligibility criteria in terms of reference previously approved by GFC Undergraduate Awards and Bursaries Committee (UABC) must be forwarded to GFC UABC for approval. The Office of the Registrar is responsible for monitoring financial supports requiring amendment and will consult with the appropriate stakeholder(s) before forwarding to GFC UABC.

C. ANNUAL VALUE SETTING

For donor funded student financial supports held by the Office of the Registrar, the Office of the Registrar will determine the annual value to be expended in consultation with the Office of Advancement.

For donor funded student financial supports held by Faculties, the Faculty will determine the annual value to be expended by the Office of the Registrar.

3. MERIT-BASED STUDENT FINANCIAL SUPPORTS

A. SELECTION CRITERIA

Primary selection criteria for merit-based student financial supports will be based on undergraduate academic performance. Secondary selection criteria may include, but are not limited to, community service, leadership, and experiential learning.

If selection cannot be made by applying both primary and secondary selection criteria, selection will be based on a combination of primary criteria and criteria that most closely fulfills the original purpose of the financial support.

B. ELIGIBILITY

Merit-based student financial supports established by the University will normally be available to meritorious students who have completed a minimum 24 credits over the most recent September to April period, unless otherwise specified in the terms of reference of the financial support or the merit-based competition program.

C. DISBURSEMENT
Merit-based student financial supports are normally disbursed to the **student tuition account**. The first charge against any financial support is to pay outstanding University fees including tuition, incidental fees and other university-related fees.

Merit-based student financial supports are normally payable only when students are in **full-time attendance** at the University in the term during which funds are disbursed. Merit-based student financial supports that are awarded prior to the commencement of or within the Fall Term will be divided evenly between the Fall Term and the Winter Term. The student financial support value will normally be prorated if the attendance of the student changes.

Merit-based student financial supports awarded to a convocating student at the time of convocation will normally be disbursed to the student’s account following convocation.

D. MAJOR AWARD
In order that funds may be broadly distributed, a student may hold only one University of Alberta **major award** per category (leadership, academics, athletics) in any one year. The total value of merit-based student financial supports already received by students may be taken into consideration in selections for open award competitions.

E. ACADEMIC TRANSCRIPT
Merit-based student financial supports approved by GFC UABC and administered by the Office of the Registrar will be listed on the academic transcript. Need-based and hybrid awards will not appear on the academic transcript.

4. NEED-BASED STUDENT FINANCIAL SUPPORTS
The Office of the Registrar administers need-based financial supports including bursaries and **emergency funding** for students. The Office of the Registrar also provides advising and program support for government financial support programs. The procedures outlined in this section do not refer to how government financial support programs are supported.

A. SELECTION CRITERIA
Primary selection criteria for need-based student financial supports will be based on **demonstrated financial need**. Secondary selection criteria may include, but are not limited to, community service, leadership, experiential learning, and undergraduate academic performance as long as the undergraduate academic performance requirement stated in the terms of reference does not exceed a 3.0 GPA.

If selection cannot be made by applying both primary and secondary selection criteria, selection will be based on a combination of primary criteria and criteria that most closely fulfills the original purpose of the financial support.

B. ELIGIBILITY
Need-based student financial supports established by the University, unless otherwise specified by the terms of reference of the financial support, will normally be available to students with full-time attendance and have demonstrated financial need for the current academic year.

Demonstrated financial need will normally be assessed through a common assessment practice as defined by the Office of the Registrar using a student's expenses and resources. The Common Assessment Practice is derived from provincial and federal loan guidelines. The Common Assessment Practice will also allow for exceptional student situations where the Common Assessment Practice does not reflect the true need of eligible students or does not address the institutional, diversity, or equity priorities of the University.

Domestic students are normally expected to access the maximum government student loan available to them in the current academic year. Assessed need that cannot be met by this loan may be met through University need-based student financial supports up to an annual maximum as determined by the University.

International students are required by the federal government of Canada to demonstrate sufficient resources to meet their cost of attendance at University in order to qualify for a study permit. International students...
experiencing an emergency or exceptional circumstances may be considered for need-based student financial supports if their planned financial resources have changed by completing a financial need assessment.

C. DISBURSEMENT

Need-based student financial supports are normally disbursed to the student tuition account. The first charge against any financial support is to pay outstanding University fees including tuition, incidental fees and other university-related fees.

Need-based student financial supports are normally payable only when students are in full-time attendance at the University in the term during which funds are disbursed. Need-based student financial supports will normally be applied to a single term of enrolment in the academic year in which the financial need assessment was evaluated. The student financial support value will normally be re-evaluated if the attendance or enrollment of the student changes.

5. HYBRID AWARDS

A. SELECTION CRITERIA

Primary selection criteria for hybrid awards will be based on a combination of undergraduate academic performance and indicated financial need as long as the undergraduate academic performance requirement stated in the terms of reference does not exceed a 3.0 GPA.

Secondary selection criteria may include, but are not limited to, community service, leadership and experiential learning.

If selection cannot be made by applying both primary and secondary selection criteria, selection will be based on a combination of primary criteria and criteria that most closely fulfills the original purpose of the financial support.

B. ELIGIBILITY

Hybrid awards established by the University, unless otherwise specified by the terms of reference of the financial support, will normally be available to students with full-time attendance and have indicated financial need in either the current or previous academic year.

Indicated financial need will normally be assessed through defined indicators of financial need as established by the Office of the Registrar. Defined indicators of financial need are derived from elements of the Common Assessment Practice.

C. DISBURSEMENT

Hybrid awards are normally disbursed in accordance with disbursements outlined in section 3C of this procedure.

6. ANNUAL REPORTING

Each academic year, the Vice-Provost and University Registrar will present an annual report on Undergraduate Student Financial Support to GFC and the Board of Governors. The report serves as an overview of undergraduate financial supports and services administered by Student Financial Support (SFS) within the Office of the Registrar (RO).

DEFINITIONS

Definitions should be listed in the sequence they occur in the document (i.e. not alphabetical).
<p>| <strong>Student Financial Supports</strong> | Student financial supports are items of monetary and/or other value awarded to a student by the University of Alberta or by donors through the University on the basis of completion of requirements outlined in the selection criteria or terms of reference. Merit-based student financial supports include, but are not limited to, awards, scholarships, prizes, and University medals. Merit-based financial supports are competitive; successful completion of the requirements does not guarantee receipt of the funding. Need-based student financial supports include, but are not limited to, bursaries, loans, and emergency funding. Hybrid awards require undergraduate academic performance and indicated financial need, and will be titled as “Awards”. |
| <strong>Terms of Reference</strong> | The terms of reference of a student financial support provide all relevant information regarding how the student financial support will be disbursed, including the financial terms, the selection and eligibility criteria, and any other information pertinent to the administration. |
| <strong>Hybrid Awards</strong> | Hybrid awards are financial supports whose primary selection criteria is a combination of both undergraduate academic performance and indicated financial need. |
| <strong>Undergraduate Academic Performance</strong> | Undergraduate academic performance refers to the academic requirements for student financial supports and is categorized as superior academic achievement or satisfactory academic standing. Superior academic achievement in the context of student financial supports will normally mean either of the following: i. GPA of 3.5 or higher in the University or; ii. standing in the upper 10% of comparable students in a Faculty, School, Department or other subdivision of a Faculty. Superior academic achievement in the context of student financial supports for entrance scholarships will normally mean a minimum average of 80% on marks used at the time of assessment. Satisfactory academic standing in a Faculty means satisfactory as defined within the <em>University Calendar</em> by the Faculty in question. If no such definition has been made by the Faculty, satisfactory academic standing means being eligible to continue in or graduate from the program in which the student is registered exclusive of those students allowed to continue on a probationary basis. For entrance awards, a student will be deemed to have achieved satisfactory academic standing provided they have been granted admission to a program of study at the University of Alberta. |
| <strong>Demonstrated Financial Need</strong> | Demonstrated financial need is a calculation of overall financial shortfall available for a student's academic and basic living costs for the current academic year. The calculation will normally be based on the Common Assessment Practice. |
| <strong>Indicated Financial Need</strong> | Indicated financial need is used in instances where a determination of full financial shortfall is unnecessary, as in Hybrid awards. Indicated |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>financial need</strong></th>
<th>financial need is determined through review of a student’s financial situation based on a subset of criteria taken from indicators based on the Common Assessment Practice and does not require a full financial shortfall assessment.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Student Tuition Account</strong></td>
<td>The student tuition account is the receivable account by which charges (including tuition and fees), and payments are processed. Students access their account details through Bear Tracks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Full-Time Attendance</strong></td>
<td>Full-time attendance as defined within the University Calendar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Major Award</strong></td>
<td>A major award, as defined by the GFC UABC, is any financial support with a value equal or greater to the full course load tuition and any related differential fees charged to a student within a given academic year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Emergency Funding</strong></td>
<td>Emergency funding is a financial support given to a student primarily on the basis of demonstrated financial need and who have demonstrated emergent financial challenge. Emergency funding can either be repayable or non-repayable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FORMS**
Should a link fail, please contact uappol@ualberta.ca. [▲Top]

No forms for this procedure.

**RELATED LINKS**
Should a link fail, please contact uappol@ualberta.ca. [▲Top]

Office of the Provost and Vice-President (Academic) (University of Alberta)
Office of the Registrar (University of Alberta)
University Governance (University of Alberta)
Graduate Student Financial Supports Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Office of Administrative Responsibility:</th>
<th>Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Approver:</td>
<td>Graduate Scholarship Advisory Committee</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Scope:**
Compliance with this University policy extends to all academic, support and excluded staff, postdoctoral fellows, and academic colleagues as outlined and defined in the Recruitment Policy [<https://policiesonline.ualberta.ca/policiesprocedures/policies/recruitment-policy.pdf>](https://policiesonline.ualberta.ca/policiesprocedures/policies/recruitment-policy.pdf) (Appendix A) and Appendix B [<https://policiesonline.ualberta.ca/policiesprocedures/procedures/recruitment-policy-appendix-b-definition-and-categories-of-support-staff.pdf>](https://policiesonline.ualberta.ca/policiesprocedures/procedures/recruitment-policy-appendix-b-definition-and-categories-of-support-staff.pdf):
Definitions and Categories); undergraduate, graduate and Faculty of Extension students; emeriti; members of the Board of Governors; visitors to campus, including visiting speakers and scholars; third party contractors; and volunteers.

**Purpose**
To provide information about graduate student financial supports at the University of Alberta.
The purpose of this procedure is to ensure consistency in fundamental financial support practices and procedures across the institution, while allowing academic units sufficient flexibility to administer their financial supports in a manner appropriate to their individual needs and objectives and in alignment with institutional objectives.

**PROCEDURE**

1. **ADMINISTRATION**

Merit-based student financial supports are normally administered by the Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research (FGSR) as specified in the terms of reference. Recipients of merit-based student financial supports are nominated to the Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research by Faculties, departments or units on campus as specified in the terms of reference.

Need-based student financial supports are normally administered by the Office of the Registrar as specified in the terms of reference.
The FGSR will communicate with the Office of Advancement on recipient selection for donor funded student financial supports. The FGSR and Office of Advancement will work collaboratively to ensure administrative procedures align with donor intent.

Faculties, Departments and other administrative units who are responsible for nominating recipients to the FGSR will administer selection practices that meet the eligibility and selection criteria outlined in the terms of reference. Nominating units will inform the FGSR when they have identified that selection criteria no longer support a diverse pool of eligible applicants or become too restrictive to allow the university to award the funds every year. The FGSR will work with the nominating unit and Office of Advancement to explore options for changing the selection criteria to address the limitations.

The FGSR will coordinate with Financial Services as necessary to ensure proper financial management and disbursement of student financial supports.

2. MAINTENANCE OF TERMS OF REFERENCE
   A. GENERAL ELIGIBILITY
      Student financial supports are tenable only at the University of Alberta unless otherwise stated in the terms of reference. Student financial supports specific to a particular Faculty are generally tenable only in that Faculty.
   B. AMENDING TERMS OF REFERENCE
      When the terms of reference become prohibitive to fulfill through obsolescence, then the University may amend the terms to carry out the nearest possible original intent of the donor, while still ensuring that the benefit of such financial supports continues. For example, amendments to existing terms of reference may be necessary when there are no longer eligible students due to changes in University programming. Amendments to the general selection and eligibility criteria in the terms of reference previously approved by the Graduate Scholarship Committee (GSC) must be forwarded to GSC for approval. The Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research is responsible for monitoring these financial supports requiring amendment and will consult with the appropriate stakeholder(s) before forwarding to GSC.
   C. ANNUAL VALUE SETTING
      For donor funded student financial supports for which the FGSR holds administrative responsibility, the FGSR will determine the annual value to be expended unless indicated in the terms of reference.

3. MERIT-BASED FINANCIAL SUPPORT
   A. SELECTION CRITERIA
      Primary selection criteria for merit-based student financial supports will be based on graduate academic performance. Secondary selection criteria may include, but are not limited to, community service, leadership, and experiential learning.
      If selection cannot be made by applying both primary and secondary selection criteria, selection will be based on a combination of primary criteria and criteria that most closely fulfills the original purpose of the financial support.
   B. ELIGIBILITY
      Students registered in master’s programs are eligible to hold awards during the first four years of their program unless stated otherwise in the terms of reference for the award. Consideration for funding for the fifth year of a master’s program may be considered if a compelling explanation (ie. illness, parental leave, personal catastrophe) outlined in a letter of support from the department is provided.
      Students registered in doctoral programs are eligible to hold awards during the first six years of their program unless stated otherwise in the terms of reference for the award. Consideration for funding for the seventh year of a doctoral program may be considered if a compelling explanation (ie. illness, parental leave, personal catastrophe) outlined in a letter of support from the department is provided.
Full-time Registration

Full-time thesis-based students are required to be registered full-time in each term for the duration of the award.

Ineligible Student Categories

Part-time students are not typically eligible, unless specified in the terms of reference for the award. If a student is selected as the recipient of one of the limited number of awards for which part-time students are eligible, the student is required to register in each term for the duration of the award.

Students registered in Graduate Certificate and Diploma programs are not typically eligible, unless specified in the terms of reference for the award. If a student is selected as the recipient of one of the limited number of awards for which Graduate Certificate and Diploma students are eligible, the student is required to register in each term for the duration of the award.

Qualifying students, students on academic probation, visiting students and students in cost-recovery programs are not eligible to hold FGSR-administered awards, unless specified in the terms of reference for the award.

C. DISBURSEMENT

Graduate student financial supports are normally processed through direct deposit payroll, unless otherwise specified in the terms of reference. Recipients are responsible for setting up their direct deposit information in order to receive payment.

Merit-based student financial supports are normally payable only when students are registered full time at the University in the term during which funds are disbursed, unless otherwise specified in the award terms of reference.

Merit-based student financial supports up to and including the value of $6,000 are paid in one payment during the timeframe outlined in the award letter of offer.

Merit-based student financial supports whose values are between $6,000 and $11,999.99 are either paid in two equal sums in consecutive terms (ie Fall and Winter) or disbursed as per the semi-monthly payroll schedule over the duration of twelve months. Students receiving term-based funding who no longer meet the eligibility criteria in the second term may have their payment terminated, and students receiving semi-monthly funding may have their payment terminated the month in which they complete their degree requirements.

Merit-based student financial supports whose values are greater than $12,000 will be disbursed as per the semi-monthly payroll schedule over the duration of twelve months. If a student no longer meets the eligibility requirements of the financial support remaining payments may be terminated.

Changes to a student’s status which render the recipient ineligible to hold all or some specific portion of an award, may result in the requirement to repay all or a portion of the award. These changes include but are not limited to: being placed on academic probation, withdrawal from the program, change in registration status, change in program, accepting another award which precludes holding concurrent awards.

D. ACADEMIC TRANSCRIPT

Scholarship and Prize student financial supports approved by GSC and administered by the Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research will be listed on the academic transcript. Need-based student financial supports will not appear on the academic transcript.

4. NEED-BASED FINANCIAL SUPPORT

The Office of the Registrar administers need-based financial supports including bursaries and emergency funding for students. Additional bursaries are administered through the Graduate Student’s Association and University of Alberta International. The Office of the Registrar, also provide advising and program support for government financial
support programs. The procedures outlined in this section do not refer to how government financial support programs are supported.

A. SELECTION CRITERIA

Primary selection criteria for need-based student financial supports will be based on **demonstrated financial need**. Secondary selection criteria may include, but are not limited to, community service, leadership, experiential learning, and graduate academic performance, as long as the graduate academic performance requirement does not exceed a 3.0 GPA.

If selection cannot be made by applying both primary and secondary selection criteria, selection will be based on a combination of primary criteria and criteria that most closely fulfills the original purpose of the financial support.

B. ELIGIBILITY

Need-based student financial supports established by the University, unless otherwise specified by the terms of reference of the financial support, will normally be available to students with full-time enrollment and have demonstrated financial need for the current academic year.

Demonstrated financial need will normally be assessed through a common assessment practice as defined by the Office of the Registrar using a student's expenses and resources. The common assessment practice is derived from provincial and federal loan guidelines. The common assessment practice will also allow for exceptional student situations where the common assessment does not reflect the true need of eligible students or does not address the institutional, diversity, or equity priorities of the University.

Domestic students are expected to access the maximum government student loan available to them in the current academic year. Assessed need that cannot be met by this loan may be met through University need-based student financial supports up to an annual maximum as determined by the University.

International students are required by the federal government of Canada to demonstrate sufficient resources to meet their cost of attendance at University in order to qualify for a study permit. International students experiencing an emergency or exceptional circumstances may be considered for need-based student financial supports if their planned financial resources have changed by completing a financial need assessment.

C. DISBURSEMENT

Need-based student financial supports are normally disbursed to the **student tuition account**. The first charge against any financial support is to pay outstanding University fees including tuition, incidental fees and other university-related fees.

Need-based student financial supports are normally payable only when students are in full-time attendance at the University in the term during which funds are disbursed. Need-based student financial supports will normally be applied to a single term of enrolment in the academic year in which the financial need assessment was evaluated. The student financial support value will normally be re-evaluated if the attendance or enrollment of the student changes.

5. ANNUAL REPORTING

Each academic year, the Vice-Provost and Dean of FGSR will present an annual report on Graduate Student Financial Support to FGSR council and then to the GFC. The report serves as an overview of graduate financial supports and services administered by the Faculty of Graduate Studies (FGSR).

**DEFINITIONS**

Definitions should be listed in the sequence they occur in the document (i.e. not alphabetical).

Any definitions listed in the following table apply to this document only with no implied or intended institution-wide use. [▲Top]
| **Student Financial Supports** | Student financial supports are items of monetary and/or other value awarded to a student by the University of Alberta or by donors through the University on the basis of completion of requirements outlined in the selection criteria or terms of reference.  
Merit-based student financial supports include, but are not limited to, awards, scholarships, prizes, and University medals. Merit-based financial supports are competitive; successful completion of the requirements does not guarantee receipt of the funding.  
Need-based student financial supports include, but are not limited to, bursaries, loans, and emergency funding. |
| **Terms of Reference** | The terms of reference of a student financial support provide all relevant information regarding how the student financial support will be disbursed, including the financial terms, the selection and eligibility criteria, and any other information pertinent to the administration. |
| **Graduate Academic Performance** | Graduate academic performance refers to the academic grading requirements for student financial supports and are categorized as superior academic achievement or satisfactory academic standing.  
Superior academic achievement will normally mean the following:  
i. GPA of 3.5 or higher in the University  
Superior academic achievement for entrance scholarships will normally mean a minimum GPA of 3.5 based on marks used at the time of assessment.  
Satisfactory academic standing is defined as:  
i. GPA of 3.0 for newly admitted graduate students  
ii. GPA of 2.7 or greater for continuing students  
Satisfactory academic achievement for entrance scholarships will normally mean a minimum GPA of 3.0 based on the marks used at the time of assessment. |
| **Demonstrated Financial Need** | Demonstrated financial need is a calculation of overall financial shortfall available for a student's academic and basic living costs for the current academic year. The calculation will normally be based on the common assessment practice. |
| **Full-Time Attendance** | Full-time attendance as defined within the *University Calendar*. |
| **Emergency Funding** | Emergency funding is a financial support given to a student primarily on the basis of demonstrated financial need and who have demonstrated emergent financial challenge. Emergency funding can either be repayable or non-repayable. |
| **Student Tuition Account** | The student tuition account is the receivable account by which charges (including tuition and fees), and payments are processed. Students access their account details through Bear Tracks. |
No forms for this procedure.

**RELATED LINKS**

Should a link fail, please contact uappol@ualberta.ca. [▲Top]

Office of the Provost and Vice-President (Academic) (University of Alberta)
Office of the Registrar (University of Alberta)
University Governance (University of Alberta)
Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research (University of Alberta)
Governance Executive Summary
Advice, Discussion, Information Item

| Agenda Title | Consultation on Program Approval Processes |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proposed by</td>
<td>GFC Executive ad hoc Committee on Program Approval Processes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presenter</td>
<td>Tammy Hopper, Vice-Provost (Programs)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Details</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Responsibility</td>
<td>General Faculties Council</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Purpose of the Proposal is (please be specific)</td>
<td>The proposal is before the committee to discuss and receive input into proposed changes to the process for program approval.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executive Summary (outline the specific item – and remember your audience)</td>
<td>A fundamental role of GFC is to set university-wide academic regulations, and approve new programs and changes to existing programs. The Report of the ad hoc Committee on Academic Governance including Delegated Authority, endorsed by GFC in April 2017, noted the following: The approval pathways related to programs and regulations can be convoluted and burdensome for those proposing them. The current standing committee structure does not appear to provide a cohesive approach to these activities as portions of proposals can follow different approval pathways; this results in the appearance of a confusing, slow and cumbersome pathway for approval of new programs, program changes and course changes. The recommendations in this section seek to ensure that the governance oversight expected by GFC is in place and that proposals follow pathways that are clear and add value at each step. Some changes are proposed which add value to the proposal and some provide a more transparent and seamless pathway to approval. The changes will ensure: approval processes are streamlined yet rigorous; that necessary consultations occur; that there is clarity with regard to which bodies have authority for particular approvals; that value is added at each step; and that resources are used efficiently.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Since GFC endorsed the ad hoc report and recommendations, there has been considerable consultation as committees have discussed and revised terms of reference to implement the recommendations. The GFC Executive Transition Committee, which was tasked with ensuring the implementation of the recommendations, has provided guidance and advice as this work unfolded.

In January 2019, the Transition Committee reported to GFC Executive that the vision of the ad hoc committee regarding program approval pathways could not be achieved within the current committee structure, and recommended that GFC Executive establish an ad hoc Committee
on Program Approval Processes to conduct further consultation with stakeholders and develop more suitable pathways for program approval.

The ad hoc Committee on Program Approval Processes was mandated to propose revised pathways that are transparent, straightforward and incorporate the recommendations of the ad hoc committee on Academic Governance including Delegated Authority.

The ad hoc committee is coming forward at this time to consult on a proposal for a new process of program approval at the university that consolidates approval functions that currently reside in various committees and policy processes. This draft proposal represents a significant departure from current practice but one that could potentially provide a cohesive, transparent, and streamlined approach to the process. In the proposed pathway, all components (except resources) of new and revised programs would come to a single committee for approval.

The attached briefing note explains the principles the committee used to frame the development of a new process and the resulting outcomes.

The proposal calls for the establishment of a new committee – the GFC Programs Committee. This committee’s mandate would consolidate work currently under the responsibilities of Academic Planning Committee, Academic Standards Committee, Executive Committee and the process of GFC Policy Manual Section 37. The committee would have a clear governance focus and matters of an administrative nature would reside in the Provost’s or Registrar’s offices as appropriate.

Structurally, one new standing committee would be added to GFC, the Academic Standards Committee would be disbanded, and GFC Policy Manual Section 37 would be rescinded. Components of program approval would be removed from the terms of reference of APC and Executive. APC would continue to deal with proposals with institution wide implications to the university’s longer term academic, research, financial, and facilities development.

Operationally, proposals would receive early support by the Provost’s and Registrar’s offices during the development stages which will avoid some of the complications seen in the current system of approval which result in slowing the progress of approval, and/or put an additional workload burden on units. Approval would be streamlined as one committee would have delegated authority to approve the various components rather than the current multi-step process. Additionally, proposals which have impact beyond a single faculty would be identified early and appropriate consultation could occur in a timely fashion.
**Questions for Discussion:**

*The questions for discussion at this time are limited to those of governance oversight. A second phase of development would deal with the operational aspects of the final approved pathways.*

1. Are the following principles, which are outlined by the ad hoc committee in Attachment 1, appropriate? Should others be added?
   - clear and transparent
   - efficient and streamlined
   - effective
   - governance focused
   - recognition that graduate programs are fundamentally different
   - institutionally focused
   - supports innovation
   - maintains attention to impact on students

2. What comments do you have on the outcomes for the proposed new process:
   - excellence in program quality
   - sustainable and efficient
   - informs the community
   - ensures appropriate administration mechanisms are in place to support units

3. What are your thoughts on establishing a Programs Committee to consolidate program approval functions in one place?

4. Is the authority delegated to the GFC Programs Committee in keeping with the GFC Principles of Delegation of Authority that calls for delegations to be reasonable in scope and appropriate to the character and capacity of the body?

5. What challenges do you see with the proposed process?

6. What benefits do you see with the proposed process?

**Supplementary Notes and context**

The GFC Academic Standards Committee discussed this item during a special consultation on October 17 that also included the chair of the GFC Executive Transition Committee, and the Vice-Dean of the Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research. The committee expressed general support for the proposal, in particular the streamlining of the approval process through consolidating current disparate approval authorities into a single committee.

ASC discussed how the governance process could be supported by an administrative committee. They also discussed approval for non-credit programs, proposed composition of governance and administrative support committees, the role of the Associate Deans and where their expertise would be best positioned, asymmetry between graduate and undergraduate programs and implications to approval processes,
Item No. 10

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engagement and Routing (Include proposed plan)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GFC Academic Planning Committee – September 25 (no documents), October 9, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GFC Academic Standards Committee – September 19 (no documents), October 17, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GFC ASC Subcommittee on Standards – October 3, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vice-Provost’s Program Advisory Committee of Associate Deans Undergraduate – September 26, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GFC Executive Transition Committee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GFC Academic Planning Committee/GFC Academic Standards Committee – joint meeting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Policy Review Committee, Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research – October 2, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GFC Executive Committee – November 4, 2019 for Early Consultation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Faculties Committee – November 25, 2019 for Early Consultation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Strategic Alignment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alignment with For the Public Good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Please note the Institutional Strategic Plan objective(s)/strategies the proposal supports.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alignment with Institutional Risk Indicator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Please note below the specific institutional risk(s) this proposal is addressing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ Enrolment Management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ Faculty and Staff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ Funding and Resource Management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ IT Services, Software and Hardware</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☒ Leadership and Change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ Physical Infrastructure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ Relationship with Stakeholders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ Reputation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ Research Enterprise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ Safety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ Student Success</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Legislative Compliance and jurisdiction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Post-Secondary Learning Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Faculties Council</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GFC Executive Committee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GFC Principles of Delegation of Authority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GFC Principles of Committee Composition</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Attachments (each to be numbered 1 - <>)

1. Attachment 1: Briefing Note
2. Attachment 2: Draft of Proposed GFC Programs Committee Terms of Reference
3. Attachment 3: Mandates, Responsibilities, Composition of Governance and Administrative Committees
4. Attachment 4: Terms of Reference – GFC Executive ad hoc committee on Program Approval Processes

Prepared by: Provost’s Office and University Governance
Update – ad hoc Program Approval Pathways

Background

In response to the Report of the ad hoc Committee on Academic Governance including Delegated Authority endorsed by GFC in April 2017, the GFC Executive Committee established a Transition Committee to advise and guide the implementation of the Report’s recommendations. The Transition Committee provided regular reports to the Executive Committee on the progress of the implementation.

In January 2019, the Transition Committee reported to Executive on the recommendations around program approval. They concurred with the findings of the ad hoc committee that identified that the current system of program approval at the university was a complex one that involves many facets including three standing committees, one sub-committee, and a process governed by GFC policy.

Although 6 of the 11 recommendations would be addressed through upcoming changes to committee terms of reference which would streamline some of the current processes and provide oversight at the appropriate levels, the Transition Committee noted that it had become evident that further work was required to achieve the efficiencies and effectiveness envisioned for the program approval process.

On the recommendation of the Transition Committee, Executive established an ad hoc committee to conduct further consultation with stakeholders and develop appropriate pathways. This group would be tasked with reviewing current approval processes and propose revised pathways that would be transparent, straightforward and incorporate the recommendations from the ad hoc Report.

Current Status

The newly constituted ad hoc committee on program approval process met over two days May 23-24 to begin its work. The committee began by discussing the purpose of program approval, developing principles to guide what an ideal process would look like, and discussing challenges to be mindful of.

Purpose of Program Approval

- Ensure institutional program quality and sustainability
- Enhance reputation
- Alignment with institutional mandate and strategic plan
- Prevent unnecessary duplication
- Encourage inter/multidisciplinary programs and innovation
- Consider impact on students, other units
- Inform community

Principles of Program Approval Pathway

- Clear and transparent
- Efficient and streamlined
• Approval items are rationally grouped together
• Rigorous review and oversight
• Leverage stakeholder strengths
• Supports innovation

Outcomes
• Pathways and processes clear and cohesive
• Proponents receive support at an early stage
• Administrative mechanisms in place to support program development and ensure that administrative and editorial processes occur outside of the governance process whenever possible
• Streamlined approach

Challenges
• Balancing Faculty autonomy with institutional responsibility
• Budget model
• Proposals with resource implications

The group discussed these principles in the context of current processes and approval authorities. The group further discussed strategies for pulling together a coherent process that would be consistent with GFC Principles and principles of collegial governance while aligning with the principles and outcomes developed.

Next Steps

Updates – Verbal updates to Executive Committee, APC, and ASC in June 2019

Consultation – to begin fall 2019

A consultation document will be developed to guide the discussion with:
• Associate Deans undergraduate
• Policy Review Committee, FGSR
• APC
• ASC
• GFC and GFC Executive

Consultation documents:
- Briefing note
- Draft terms of reference
- Draft program development flow chart
- Guiding questions
1. Mandate and Role of the Committee
The GFC Programs Committee is a standing committee of General Faculties Council (GFC) charged with oversight on matters related to programs of study and courses.

2. Areas of Responsibility
a. Introduction, modification and termination of programs and courses
b. Admission, Transfer and Academic Standards
c. Physical Testing and Immunization of Students
d. Non-Credit Programs and Courses

All proposals for consideration of the Committee are first submitted to the Provost and Vice-President (Academic) and/or the Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research who will consult as necessary with Faculties and other individuals and offices in its consideration of these proposals.

3. Composition
Voting Members
   Ex-officio
   - Vice-Provost (Programs), Chair
   -- others - tbd
   Elected by GFC - tbd
   Appointed - tbd

Non-voting Members
-tbd

4. Delegated Authority from General Faculties Council
   Should be reviewed at least every three years and reported to GFC.
   
4.1 Introduction, modification and termination of programs and courses
a. Approve the introduction and modification of academic programs
b. Approve the termination of academic programs and report to GFC and APC for information.
c. Approve the introduction, modification and termination of embedded certificates
d. Approve the introduction, modification and deletion of courses
e. Approve new course designators

4.2 Admission, Transfer and Academic Standing Regulations
a. Approve routine changes to admission/transfer and academic standing regulations
b. Approve changes to International Baccalaureate (IB) and Advanced Placement (AP) regulations
c. Approve (for inclusion in the Alberta Transfer Guide) and deny courses for transfer credit to the University of Alberta which are offered by Alberta Council on
Admissions and Transfer (ACAT) member institutions and institutions within the Alberta Postsecondary Six-Sector Model with specific exceptions outlined in the Transfer Credit Articulation Procedure.

d. Approve routine changes to Physical Testing and Immunization of Students

4.3 Non-Credit Programs and Courses

a. Approve the establishment of non-credit programs and associated courses
b. Decide on any challenge made to non-credit courses which the Provost and Vice-President (Academic) has been unable to resolve.

5. Responsibilities Additional to Delegated Authority

5.1 Introduction, modification or termination of programs and courses

a. Review and recommend program suspensions to APC

5.2 Admissions, Transfer, and Academic Standards

a. Recommend to GFC on policies regarding admission, registration, academic standing
b. Recommend to GFC on changes to admissions, transfer and/or academic standards regulations with institutional scope
c. Receive and discuss the Report of the Senate Committee of Lay Observers of the Admissions Process in Quota Programs

6. Sub-delegations from the GFC Programs Committee

Should be reviewed at least every three years and reported to GFC.

6.1 Introduction, modification or termination of programs and courses

a. Academic Programs – Graduate Degree Specializations - All proposals for establishment, suspension and termination of graduate degree second level specializations shall be submitted to the Dean of the Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research. The Dean, after consultation, may approve proposals which do not involve base operating or capital funds; the Dean will report these on an annual basis to the Programs Committee.

6.2 Non-Credit Programs and Courses

a. Approval of modification or deletion of non-credit programs and courses is sub-delegated to the Provost and Vice-President (Academic) who will report these on an annual basis to the Programs Committee.

7. Limitations to Authority

The following further refines or places limitations on authorities held by or delegated to the Programs Committee:

7.1 Academic Programs

a. In cases where a new program represents a new credential for the university, final approval resides with GFC and the Board of Governors
b. Proposals which involve new space or resources or affect long-range planning shall be referred to the GFC Academic Planning Committee

7.2 Admission, Transfer and Academic Standards

a. Substantial changes and those with institutional scope are recommended to GFC
8. **Reporting**
   8.1 The Committee should regularly report to GFC with respect to its activities and decisions.

9. **Definitions**
   *Program* - refers to all credit programs that result in a government approved credential including: degrees, diplomas and certificates

   *Non-Credit Program* – refers to stand-alone programs for professional development and continuing education.

   *Embedded Certificate* – refers to a credit program with a specific area of focus that is completed during the course of an undergraduate or graduate degree program.

   *Routine* - refers to proposals which do not involve or affect other Faculties or units and do not form part of a proposal for a new program. Routine changes include any and all changes to the wording of faculty or program specific admissions or academic standing regulations.

   *Substantial* - refers to proposals which involve or affect more than one Faculty or unit; are part of a proposal for a new program; are likely to have a financial impact; represent a definite departure from current policy; involve a quota; articulate a new academic concept.

   *Dispute* - If there is any dispute or question as to which of the above categories a proposal falls under, the Provost and Vice-President (Academic) (or delegate) will decide.

   *Academic staff* – as defined by the Recruitment Policy (Appendix A) Definition and Categories of Academic Staff, Administrators and Colleagues

10. **Links**
   - Admissions Policy
   - Transfer Credit Articulation Procedure
   - Undergraduate Admissions Procedure
   - Academic Standing Policy
   - Academic Standing Regulations Procedure

Approved by General Faculties Council:
### Mandates, Responsibilities, Composition of Committees

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADMINISTRATIVE</th>
<th>GOVERNANCE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Provost</strong></td>
<td><strong>GFC Programs Committee</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mandate</strong></td>
<td>- oversight on all matters related to programs of study and courses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Responsibilities</strong></td>
<td>- introduction, modification programs, certificates, courses including designators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chair</strong></td>
<td>- admission and academic standing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ex-officio</strong></td>
<td><strong>Dean, FGSR</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Appointed/ Resource</strong></td>
<td><strong>Dean, FGSR or delegate Registrar, or delegate Vice-President SLJ Vice-President GSA</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Elected</strong></td>
<td><strong>selected faculty members, at least 4 from GFC -no more than 1 per faculty</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Resource</strong></td>
<td><strong>1 UG or GR student member of GFC</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cross-rep</strong></td>
<td><strong>Librarian, selected by Chief Librarian</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### FGSR Committee
- discussion and revision of administrative topics related to programs
- administration of admissions and selection processes
- curricular scaffolding
- enrolment issues
- institutional academic policies and procedures
- calendar language

#### GFC Programs Committee
- administration of admissions and selection processes
- curricular scaffolding
- enrolment issues
- institutional academic policies and procedures
- calendar language

#### Provost Office staff
- Associate Deans
- Associate Registrar
- Portfolio Initiatives Manager
- Provost Office staff

#### Resource
- elected faculty members, at least 4 from GFC
- no more than 1 per faculty
- 1 UG or GR student member of GFC

#### Mandate
- administration of admissions and selection processes
- curricular scaffolding
- enrolment issues
- institutional academic policies and procedures
- calendar language
GFC Executive Committee \textit{ad hoc} committee on Program Approval Processes

\textbf{Purpose:}

To review current approval processes and propose revised pathways that will be transparent, straightforward and will incorporate the recommendations of the report of the \textit{ad hoc} committee on Academic Governance including Delegated Authority, and other issues that have arisen since the report was endorsed by GFC.

\textbf{Suggested Composition:}

Vice-Provost (Programs), as Chair
One member of the GFC Academic Planning Committee
One member of the GFC Academic Standards Committee
One student member
One representative from the Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research
One representative from the Registrar’s Office

Resource members: University Governance, others as required

The \textit{ad hoc} committee may add to its membership as it deems necessary.

\textbf{Meetings:}

The \textit{ad hoc} committee will meet once or twice a month until completion.

Guests will be invited to attend as required. Other consultation activities will be determined by the \textit{ad hoc} committee.

\textbf{Terms of Reference:}

1. To consider the current program approval process, the recommendations of the \textit{ad hoc} committee (see item 5 below), and input from GFC standing committees and other stakeholders related to:
   - Approval, modification, suspension and termination of programs
   - Consideration of alternate pathways for graduate programs
   - Consideration of pathways for Centre collégial de l’Alberta (CCA) programs
   - Approval, modification and termination of non-credit programs
   - GFC Policy Manual, Section 37: course and minor program changes (including service courses)
   - Other delegations related to programs and courses within GFC standing committee terms of reference (such as: approval of courses for new programs, course designators, course renumbering)

2. To develop pathways for program approval that are consistent with GFC Principles and principles of collegial governance
3. To recommend revisions to GFC standing committee terms of reference and GFC policy to reflect proposed pathways.

4. To identify further steps (i.e., administrative delegations, faculty councils, UAPPOL).

5. An implementation plan for the following 5 recommendations from the ad hoc Committee on Academic Governance including Delegated Authority will constitute part of the ad hoc committee’s activities:
   · That, over the next year, the ASC Subcommittee on Standards be charged with reviewing and revising the policy on course and minor program changes (recommendation 16)
   · That the delegated authority to ratify new course designators and to approve re-numbering of courses move from the Executive Committee to the Academic Standards Committee (recommendation 17)
   · That the Academic Standards Committee review and approve courses associated with new program, subject to challenge through normal course circulation process (recommendation 19)
   · That the Academic Standards Committee be given delegated authority to approve the establishment, termination, and changes to college level diploma and certificate programs from the Centre collegial de l’Alberta; those requiring additional funding and/or space would be recommended to the Academic Planning Committee for approval (recommendation 20)
   · That further works and consultation occur with FGSR and Governance to develop a proposal for approval pathways that recognizes the unique nature of the Faculty (recommendation 43)

Timeline:

Final recommendations to be submitted no later than April 30, 2020

Established by GFC Executive Committee January 14, 2019
### Governance Executive Summary
Advice, Discussion, Information Item

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agenda Title</th>
<th>Institutional Risk Summary Update</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

#### Item

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proposed by</th>
<th>Gitta Kulczycki, Vice President (Finance &amp; Administration)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Presenter</td>
<td>Philip Stack AVP (Risk Management Services) Andrew Leitch, Director ERM Programs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Details

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Responsibility</th>
<th>Finance and Administration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Purpose of the Proposal is (please be specific)</td>
<td>The risk summary update reports on the status of the university’s top risks for this period. The purpose of this report is to provide an update to APC regarding changes to the institution’s risk profile that may have an impact on the university’s ability to achieve its objectives.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Executive Summary (outline the specific item – and remember your audience) | The university’s enterprise risk management program identifies, assesses and tracks its most significant risk events within 11 *core risk areas*. 
For 2019-20, the university, through its enterprise risk management committee, identified 17 top risk events, ranging from workplace fatality to failure of infrastructure. The committee highlights six risk events of particular concern during this period: 
1. Inadequate response to budget pressures 
2. Failure of critical infrastructure 
3. Significant drop in research revenue 
4. Unable to hire/retain needed faculty and staff 
5. Unable to hire/retain/promote leaders 
6. Increasing number of students in crisis 
A source of uncertainty at this time is the provincial government; its funding and policy decisions directly or indirectly affect the majority of institutional risks – as well as opportunities. The other sources of risk of particular note are university infrastructure and leadership (during the current period of transition). |
| Supplementary Notes and context | <This section is for use by University Governance only to outline governance process.> |

#### Engagement and Routing (Include proposed plan)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Consultation and Stakeholder Participation</th>
<th>Information for this report is provided by:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Enterprise Risk Management Committee</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Strategic Alignment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alignment with <em>For the Public Good</em></th>
<th>This update aligns with the ability of the University to advance all of its strategic objectives and strategies as identified in <em>For the Public Good</em>.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alignment with Institutional Risk Indicator</td>
<td>Please note below the specific institutional risk(s) this proposal is addressing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☒ Enrolment Management</td>
<td>☒ Relationship with Stakeholders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☒ Faculty and Staff</td>
<td>☒ Reputation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☒ Funding and Resource Management</td>
<td>☒ Research Enterprise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☒ IT Services, Software and Hardware</td>
<td>☒ Safety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☒ Leadership and Change</td>
<td>☒ Student Success</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☒ Physical Infrastructure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Legislative Compliance and jurisdiction

**Risk Management Policy:** The University will accept and manage risk in support of the University achieving its vision, mission and strategic priorities. In doing so it will protect both the University community and its assets and will maintain a proactive, long term and sustainable enterprise-wide risk management strategy as summarized in the Risk Management Framework and supported by the Risk Tolerance Statement, which is applied at the institutional level.

*Prepared by:* Andrew Leitch, Director, ERM Programs, [andrew.leitch@ualberta.ca](mailto:andrew.leitch@ualberta.ca)
Philip Stack, AVP (Risk Management Services) [philip.stack@ualberta.ca](mailto:philip.stack@ualberta.ca)
## GFC ACADEMIC PLANNING COMMITTEE
For the meeting of October 23, 2019

**Item No. 12**

**Governance Executive Summary**
**Advice, Discussion, Information Item**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agenda Title</th>
<th>Annual Report on Undergraduate Student Financial Support and Accompanying Overview</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Item

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proposed by</th>
<th>Melissa Padfield, Interim Vice Provost and University Registrar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Presenter</td>
<td>Melissa Padfield, Interim Vice Provost and University Registrar</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Details

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Responsibility</th>
<th>Office of the Registrar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

The Purpose of the Proposal is (please be specific)

To provide the Annual Report on Undergraduate Student Financial Support and Accompanying Overview for information. In the attached report, the RO provides a snapshot of the current state of undergraduate financial supports issued by the Office of the Registrar (RO) in the 2018/2019 fiscal year.

Annual reporting to administrative and governance committees on undergraduate student financial support is part of the Office of the Registrar’s commitment to providing reporting and information on matters affecting student success on campus.

**Executive Summary** (outline the specific item – and remember your audience)

The Executive Summary provides details on the undergraduate financial support spending for fiscal year 2018/19, giving details on spending for domestic, Indigenous and international financial support expenditures. The overview gives a quick reference of statistics and figures.

### Supplementary Notes and context

### Engagement and Routing (Include proposed plan)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Consultation and Stakeholder Participation</th>
<th>Those who have been informed:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The following stakeholders have seen the report for discussion and feedback:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Dr Wendy Rodgers, Deputy Provost: September 6, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Dr Tammy Hopper, Vice Provost Programs: September 6, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Kelly Spencer, Office of Advancement: September 6, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Edith Finczak, Office of the Provost and Vice-President (Academic): September 6, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Kate Peters, Policy Initiatives Manager: September 6, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- André Costopoulos, Dean of Students: September 6, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Alexis Ksiazkiewicz, Government &amp; Stakeholder Relations: September 6, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Brooke Milne, Dean, Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research: September 6, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Cen Huang, Interim Vice Provost and AVP International: September 6, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Doug Weir, Executive Director, Student Programs &amp; Services, University of Alberta International: September 6, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- John Gregory, Director, International Recruitment &amp; Transnational Program University of Alberta International: September 6, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Akanksha Bhatnagar, Students’ Union President: September 6, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Fahed Elian, Graduate Students’ Association President: September 6, 2019</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Those who have been consulted:</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- VPC: Sept 16, 2019</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- COSA: Sept 26, 2019</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Strategic Alignment

**Alignment with *For the Public Good***

1. **OBJECTIVE:** Build a diverse, inclusive community of exceptional undergraduate and graduate students from Edmonton, Alberta, Canada, and the world.
   
i. **Strategy:** Develop and implement an undergraduate and graduate recruitment strategy to attract top students from across the diverse communities in Alberta and Canada, leveraging our strengths as a comprehensive research-intensive, multi-campus university with options for francophone and rural liberal arts education.
   
ii. **Strategy:** Develop and implement an undergraduate and graduate recruitment and retention strategy to attract top Indigenous students.
   
iii. **Strategy:** Optimize our international recruiting strategies to attract well-qualified international students from regions of strategic importance, and enhance services and programs to ensure their academic success and integration into the activities of the university.
   
iv. **Strategy:** Ensure that qualified undergraduate and graduate students can attend the university through the provision of robust student financial support.

**Alignment with Institutional Risk Indicator**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk Indicator</th>
<th>Please note below the specific institutional risk(s) this proposal is addressing.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>☒ Enrolment Management</td>
<td>☒ Relationship with Stakeholders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ Faculty and Staff</td>
<td>☒ Reputation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☒ Funding and Resource Management</td>
<td>☐ Research Enterprise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ IT Services, Software and Hardware</td>
<td>☐ Safety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ Leadership and Change</td>
<td>☒ Student Success</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ Physical Infrastructure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Legislative Compliance and jurisdiction**

1. *Post-Secondary Learning Act (PSLA):* The PSLA (Section 26(1)(o))
2. *PSLA Section 60(1)(b)*
3. GFC Undergraduate Awards and Bursaries Committee (UABC) Terms of Reference (3. Mandate)
4. GFC Academic Planning Committee Terms of Reference Mandate of the Committee
5. General Faculties Council Terms of Reference (3. Mandate of the Committee)
## Item No. 11

|   | 6. GFC Executive Committee Terms of Reference (3. Mandate of the Committee)  
|   | 7. Board Learning and Discovery Committee (BLDC) Terms of Reference/Mandate of the Committee (Section 3) |

### Attachments:

1. Annual Report on Undergraduate Student Financial Support *(pages 1 - 28)*  
2. Overview – Annual Report on Undergraduate Student Financial Support *(pages 1-2)*

*Prepared by:* Fiona Halbert, Assistant Registrar Student Financial Support, [Fiona.halbert@ualberta.ca](mailto:Fiona.halbert@ualberta.ca)
**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

MESSAGE FROM THE INTERIM VICE-PROVOST AND UNIVERSITY REGISTRAR ............. 3

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY .................................................................................................................. 5

1. STUDENT FINANCIAL SUPPORT SPENDING
   1.1 EXPENSE BY FUNDING SOURCE ....................................................................................... 9
   1.2 EXPENSE BY FUNDING SOURCE AND FUNDING TYPE, UNDERGRADUATE ................... 10
   1.3 EXPENSE BY YEAR OF PROGRAM AND TYPE OF SUPPORT ............................................... 11

2. DOMESTIC UNDERGRADUATE STUDENT FINANCIAL SUPPORT
   2.1 OVERALL DOMESTIC UNDERGRADUATE FINANCIAL SUPPORT ........................................... 13
   2.2 ORIGIN AT THE TIME OF APPLICATION, DOMESTIC UNDERGRADUATE .......................... 14
   2.3 ALLOCATION OF ENTRANCE SCHOLARSHIPS, DOMESTIC UNDERGRADUATE ...................... 15
   2.4 ALLOCATION BY PROGRAM YEAR, DOMESTIC UNDERGRADUATE .................................... 18
   2.5 GOVERNMENT STUDENT LOANS, DOMESTIC UNDERGRADUATE .................................... 18

3. INDIGENOUS UNDERGRADUATE STUDENT FINANCIAL SUPPORT
   3.1 INDIGENOUS UNDERGRADUATE ........................................................................................... 20

4. INTERNATIONAL UNDERGRADUATE STUDENT FINANCIAL SUPPORT
   4.1 OVERALL INTERNATIONAL UNDERGRADUATE FINANCIAL SUPPORT ............................ 22
   4.2 ORIGIN AT THE TIME OF APPLICATION, INTERNATIONAL UNDERGRADUATE ................... 23
   4.3 ALLOCATION OF ENTRANCE SCHOLARSHIPS, INTERNATIONAL UNDERGRADUATE .............. 24
   4.4 ALLOCATION BY PROGRAM YEAR, INTERNATIONAL UNDERGRADUATE ......................... 25

CLOSING REMARKS ....................................................................................................................... 26

APPENDIX A: SUMMARY OF STUDENT FINANCIAL SUPPORT PROGRAMS ...................... 27
MESSAGE FROM THE INTERIM VICE-PROVOST AND UNIVERSITY REGISTRAR

Recognizing the importance of student financial support, the University of Alberta continues to prioritize the provision of funding to undergraduate students on the basis of both merit and need. Post-secondary access and affordability for Albertan, Canadian, Indigenous, and international students is critical in ensuring the university attracts and retains outstanding students from diverse regions and backgrounds.

This report provides a focused view of undergraduate financial support programs administered by the Office of the Registrar (RO) and the students who access them, including comparisons to previous years. It also helps us optimize these programs to support our students.

Supporting the institutional strategic plan, For the Public Good¹, continues to be our priority. Our work and activity with respect to student financial supports is reflected in the university’s shared strategic goals including working to ensure that qualified students can attend the University of Alberta through the provision of robust financial supports and encouraging continuous improvement in administrative, governance, planning and stewardship systems, procedures, and policies.

Over the past year we began development and consultation for a new UAPPOL (University of Alberta Policies and Procedures Online) Policy Suite on Student Financial Support (SFS). The proposed policy articulates the university’s commitment to provide and optimize student financial supports to ensure academically qualified students can attend the university, and reasserts the important partnership that exists between the University, governments and students in funding education. This will help support fundraising and clarify roles / authorities on student financial support. The policy suite will be moving forward in the fall of 2019 for approval.

In addition to policy renewal, work is underway to reduce potential risks, enhance services, and create efficiencies. A health check audit of SFS business unit functions was completed in 2018 and as a result, a substantial renewal of business processes and technologies is underway.

To help increase the profile of scholarships in the recruitment process and support our institutional goals of building a diverse class, the entrance scholarship program was rebranded and restructured in 2018. The application process is now more memorable and easy to understand with two categories for applicants: admission-based and application-based scholarships. We anticipate seeing the results of these changes in the 2019/2020 reporting cycle.

As part of our ongoing commitment to financial literacy and outreach, the first Financial Literacy Week event was held on campus in March 2019. More than 370 attendees took part in sessions ranging from cooking on a budget and investing for beginners to avoiding identity theft and managing student loans. The event was also an opportunity to raise awareness of the many other services the university provides to students each year, including advice, referrals, delivery of financial support programs, and financial literacy outreach through workshops, newsletters, and events.

¹ For the Public Good, page 29
Continuing our role as leader and convener of important conversations, the Office of the Registrar and the Faculty of Law hosted the 40th annual Canadian Association of Student Financial Aid Administrators (CASFAA) conference in June 2019. More than 150 conference attendees from all across Canada converged on the U of A campus to share best practices in student financial support and learn from one another. This was the first time in almost a decade the national conference was hosted in Alberta, which covered topics on government student loans, financial support programs, financial literacy, and mental health.

Overall, 2018/19 has been a positive and productive year for offering student financial support. RO administered spending increased 6.9% from 2017/18 because of an increase in available government merit-based financial supports and an increase in RO administered need-based spending. In support of the university’s institutional strategic plan and the Undergraduate National Recruitment Strategy, these programs provide support to students in need, while offering incentives that attract top students from Alberta, Canada, and around the world. These financial support strategies will continue to play a key role particularly as the university embarks on a new tuition model for incoming international students in fall of 2020.

As we continue to assess and improve our programs to ensure student access to financial support is simple and efficient, we look forward to building effective partnerships to realize tangible benefits for students and the university in the years to come.

Sincerely,

Melissa Padfield
Interim Vice-Provost and University Registrar

---

2 For more information, please contact the Office of the Registrar.
EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

The Office of the Registrar (RO), through its Student Financial Support (SFS) unit, provides a number of need-based and merit-based financial supports, as well as financial education services. The monetary figures in this report are as of March 31, 2019, reflecting the 2018/19 fiscal year.

Table 1: Total Undergraduate Financial Support, 2018/19

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Funding Source</th>
<th>Need-based</th>
<th>Merit-based</th>
<th>Total Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Donor</td>
<td>$2,496,734</td>
<td>$8,655,033</td>
<td>$11,151,767</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Government</td>
<td>$60,479,667</td>
<td>$6,958,100</td>
<td>$67,437,767</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>University</td>
<td>$3,547,556</td>
<td>$8,634,540</td>
<td>$12,182,096</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External Funding</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$844,171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td><strong>$66,523,957</strong></td>
<td><strong>$24,247,673</strong></td>
<td><strong>$91,615,802</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Office of the Registrar

Note: External funding cannot be parsed into the categories of need-based or merit-based.

A total of $91.6M in student financial support was provided to 17,289 undergraduate students. Of the $91.6M, the RO administered a total of $30,291,963 in financial supports (this total excludes government need-based and external funding). RO administered spending increased by 6.9% ($1,957,713) in 2018/19 over the previous year as a result of an increase in available government merit-based financial supports and an increase in RO administered need-based spending.

For the 2018/19 fiscal year, the university reported a total of $125M on its consolidated financial statements for scholarships and bursaries (undergraduate and graduate). $31.4M of that total is reported for undergraduate awards and bursaries. The RO holds administrative responsibility for 80.8% ($25.4M) of the $31.4M, while $5.8M is processed by the university’s central payroll. While these payment types are broadly categorized as an award, bursary/fellowship, or scholarship, those specific distinctions are not currently recorded and therefore cannot be aligned with the amounts defined as merit- or need-based financial supports as administered by the RO and incorporated into this report.

---

3 Data source used for government loan information reported is based on remitted government loans to student accounts and does not reflect the total loan amounts students receive, e.g., cost of living amount provided directly to students. Loan amounts refunded back to loan providers resulting from student withdrawals is not captured and is anticipated to account for less than 0.5% of total loans issued.

4 External Funding is contributed and selected by external organizations, but processed by the RO.

5 The $30.2M reported in this report as RO administered includes funding that is not recorded in the university’s accounting system and therefore is not reflected in the overall consolidated financial statements.

6 Requests for central payroll payments are initiated by individual faculties, departments, and other offices on campus: 49% ($2.9M) of these funds comes from restricted funds for research projects and 44% ($2.6M) come from university operating sources.
Table 2: Total RO Administered Financial Support 2018/19

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Funding Source</th>
<th>2016/17 Total</th>
<th>2017/18 Total</th>
<th>2018/19 Total</th>
<th>% Change 2018/19 from 2017/18</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Donor</td>
<td>$9,590,104</td>
<td>$9,262,100</td>
<td>$11,151,767</td>
<td>20.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Government</td>
<td>$7,285,700</td>
<td>$6,376,400</td>
<td>$6,958,100</td>
<td>9.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>University</td>
<td>$11,053,429</td>
<td>$12,695,750</td>
<td>$12,182,096</td>
<td>-4.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>$27,929,233</td>
<td>$28,334,250</td>
<td>$30,291,963</td>
<td>6.9%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Office of the Registrar
Note: Government loans not included in this table.

There were changes to spending from all funding sources in 2018/19 as compared to the previous year, including an increase in government merit-based spending closer to 2016/17 levels. In 2017/18, there was a decrease in government merit-based spending. Through planning and promotion, the RO increased government merit-based funding in 2018/19. In addition, there was an increase in the funding made available to Indigenous undergraduate students through the government-funded Indigenous Careers Award.

Spending of annual and endowed donor funds between 2017/18 and 2018/19 increased. Donor funding administered by the RO saw a dramatic increase of $1.9M. This can be attributed to the transfer of endowments to the RO from faculties (not previously reported on), the creation of new donor-funded financial supports, and our continued commitment to maximizing the spending of endowment earnings.

The overall spending decrease ($513,654) on university-funded financial supports can be attributed to a decrease in international and domestic scholarships allocated to Year 1 students. Changes in applicant behaviour, including a decrease in scholarship acceptance, also contributed to the decrease. As such, while the budget allocation did not decrease for university-funded financial supports, student choice changed the spend rate.

---

7 Government merit-based is defined as scholarships funded by the Government of Alberta.
Over the last three years, Government of Alberta (GoA) loan amounts have been relatively stable. In 2016/17, the total GoA loan amount was $59M, in 2017/18 it dropped to $58M, and in 2018/19 it increased to $60M. This increase ($2.5M) was spent on government need-based funding as well, though insight into the reason for this increase is unavailable.

**Domestic students**
$86M was issued to 16,118 domestic students, $60M of which came from government need-based funding. Government need-based funding was accessed by nearly 42% (11,501) of all domestic undergraduate students. 87% of domestic funding went to Alberta students, which matches their enrolment proportion of 87% of domestic students. Spending on domestic bursaries increased by 36.6% ($1,330,427). Increase in domestic bursary spending is due to improvements and faster turnaround time for both application and assessment processing.

**Indigenous students**
Of the 1,175\(^8\) self-identified undergraduate Indigenous students at the university, 71% (837 students) are currently receiving merit- and need-based financial support (not including third-party/First Nations, Métis, or Inuit sponsorship). The distribution of Indigenous financial support as a percentage of total undergraduate financial support increased moderately across all financial support types in 2018/19 with the most significant increase, 52%, coming from scholarships.

---
\(^8\) 2018/19 Annual Report on Undergraduate Enrolment.
International students

Overall spending on international students decreased by 13.2% ($703,742) in 2018/19. A total of 1,011 international students received financial supports (an 18% decrease compared to 2017/18).

The decrease in the number of international students funded by financial supports can be attributed to changes in applicant behaviour, including a decrease in scholarship acceptance. The average amount distributed for international financial support rose by 5% (from $4,300 to $4,502) compared to 2017/18 and is attributed to an increase in the average amount of need-based financial supports issued to international students in 2018/19. The RO and University of Alberta International (UAI) will continue to ensure international financial supports further international recruitment and retention efforts as we implement our new tuition framework for international students beginning in Fall 2020.9

9 Starting in 2020, the U of A will move to a program-based international student tuition model, which will provide all incoming undergraduate international students with a tuition guarantee. This change stems from requirements imposed by amendments to the Post-Secondary Learning Act from Bill 19, which requires predictability in the tuition of international students.
1. STUDENT FINANCIAL SUPPORT SPENDING
1.1 EXPENSE BY FUNDING SOURCE

In 2018/19, the RO administered $30,291,963 (6.9% increase from the previous year) to 8,796 undergraduate students from various sources (see Figure 2 for funding sources), a decrease of 155 students (1.7%) from 2017/18. University operating funds (including repayable loan funds) accounted for $12.1M in total financial support, a decrease of 4% ($513,654) from the previous year.

The number of emergency loans (repayable need-based financial support) decreased in 2018/19 by 17.5% (39 students), which indicates fewer students were in urgent need and/or may have accessed non-repayable need-based supports instead, such as bursaries.

2018/19 saw a 32.3% ($1.8M) increase in donor, endowed spending which is the result of three factors: more new endowments, some endowments transferred to the RO from faculties, and our continued commitment to maximizing the spending of endowment earnings.

Figure 2: Expense by Funding Source, Undergraduates, 2018/19

| Source: Office of the Registrar |
| Repayable Loan, University 1% | $377,552 |
| Government, Merit 23% | $6,958,100 |
| Operating, University 39% | $11,804,544 |
| Donor, Endowed 25% | $7,530,224 |
| Donor, Annual Donations 13% | $3,621,543 |

Note: Repayable emergency loans include repayable emergency loans issued by both the RO and University of Alberta International. Donor, Annual Donations includes The Access Fund Bursary (supported by Students’ Union student levy) and is included in the total for Donor, Annual Donation.

The funding sources outlined in Figure 2 were donor (37%), university (40%), and government (23%).

Over the last three years, university spending has fluctuated between 38 and 43%, with 2018/19 ending in the middle at 40%. In terms of donor funding, the RO administers 1,711 endowments (accounting for approximately 59% of the total number of university endowments) and 550 annually funded accounts.

10 Government of Alberta merit-based funding reflects provincially funded merit-based awards (including the Jason Lang Scholarship, the Louise McKinney Post-Secondary Scholarship, the Jimmie Condon Athletic Scholarship, and the Indigenous Careers Award), but does not include government student loans. The recipient information for the Alexander Rutherford Scholarship is not captured by the University of Alberta and therefore is not included in this summary.
1.2 EXPENSE BY FUNDING SOURCE AND FUNDING TYPE, UNDERGRADUATE

The following graph demonstrates how funding is distributed across merit-based and need-based programs, making the distinction between university and donor sources.

**Figure 3: Expense by University and Donor Funding, Undergraduate, 2018/19**

![Expense by University and Donor Funding, Undergraduate, 2018/19]

Source: Office of the Registrar

Note: The Access Fund Bursary (supported by SU student levy) is included in the total for Donor, Annual Donation. The graph does not include Government of Alberta need- or merit-based funding or repayable emergency loans.

University spending between funding types (merit-based and need-based) saw a shift towards increased spending on need-based programs: in 2018/19, 73% was spent on merit-based (a decrease of 7% over the previous year) and 27% on need-based programs (an increase of 7% over the previous year). This change puts us back in line with spending from 2016/17 where 71% was spent on merit-based and 29% on need-based programs. In 2017/18, 80% was spent on merit-based and 20% on need-based. When looking at all funding sources (donor and university), the distribution changed to 75% merit-based, 25% need-based (from 80% and 20% respectively). While this can be attributed to having a full bursary cycle as in past years, we have also increased the total spend on need-based programs compared to 2016/17 (an increase of $1,444,676 in 2018/19 overall). The increase in need-based spending is due to improvements in both application and assessment processing.

Need-based and merit-based supports often work together to support a single student. 32% of students who received support from need-based programs also received support from merit-based programs, indicating merit-based programs contribute to the funding package for students in financial need. However, 48% of students receiving financial supports only received government loan funding in the 2018/19 fiscal year, an increase from 46% in 2017/18. This accounts for 318 more students ($994,124) receiving government loan funding only for a second consecutive year.
1.3 EXPENSE BY YEAR OF PROGRAM AND TYPE OF SUPPORT

As students progress through their studies, funding from merit-based supports tends to decline while need-based supports increase. Compared to 2017/18, university operating spending for students in Year 1 decreased, which brought us back to 2016/17 levels ($7,650,000). This is attributed to a decrease in high achieving international entrance scholarship yield and a change in entrance admission-based scholarships.

Table 3: Merit-Based and Need-Based Support by Year of Program and Type of Support, Amount 2018/19

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year of Study12</th>
<th>Merit-Based Support</th>
<th>Need-Based Support</th>
<th>Total Expense</th>
<th>Students Supported</th>
<th>% of Total Enrolment14</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Total</td>
<td>% of Total</td>
<td>Total</td>
<td>% of Total</td>
<td>Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 1</td>
<td>$7,740,849</td>
<td>31.9%</td>
<td>$14,018,108</td>
<td>21.1%</td>
<td>$21,758,957</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 2 to 5</td>
<td>$16,331,600</td>
<td>67.4%</td>
<td>$51,191,599</td>
<td>77.0%</td>
<td>$67,523,199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special/Visiting Students</td>
<td>$175,224</td>
<td>0.7%</td>
<td>$1,314,25013</td>
<td>2.0%</td>
<td>$1,489,474</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>$24,247,673</td>
<td>100.0%</td>
<td>$66,523,957</td>
<td>100.0%</td>
<td>$90,771,631</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Office of the Registrar

'Front-loading’ funding for first-year students with merit-based funding remains standard practice for the majority of U15 institutions in the recruitment of prospective students. The distribution of merit-based and need-based funding for first-year students was 36% need-based funding and 64% merit-based funding. The proportion for continuing students was 24% accessing merit-based programs and 76% accessing need-based programs.

When looking at the total financial support provided to all undergraduate students, including government loan programs, distribution across years of program tends to equalize across all years of study, with 24% of total funding going to first-year students and 74% going to continuing students. These totals do not account for funding and total enrolment of special and visiting students.

56% ($212,870) of repayable emergency loans were issued in the first three quarters of fiscal 2018/19, and 77% of that was repaid in full by the end of fiscal 2018/19. Repayment requirements for emergency loans changed in the 2018/19 year11, resulting in greater reporting for the RO and greater clarity for students.

---

11 Repayment deadlines were changed to a standard six months, whereas previously repayment timelines were specific to the individual recipient.
2018/19 saw a 17.5% decrease in the number of students accessing repayable emergency loans, equating to 39 fewer students and $42,735 less in emergency loan spending. This is a positive trend as the RO streamlined access for non-repayable financial supports such as bursaries and increased promotion of financial literacy programming for students in financial need.

The number of outstanding loan balances classified as uncollectible and written off at fiscal year-end was compared to the overall amount issued over the course of the year in order to assess the tendency for repayment by emergency loan recipients and measure the risk in providing this service. The amount written off was only 3.5% of the total issued, indicating the program is low risk to the university while being of high value to students.

506 more undergraduate students received government loans in the 2018/19 year, with the overall loan amount remitted to the university increasing by $2.5M. We will continue to monitor government loan funding trends to better understand how fluctuations in loan access impacts other University of Alberta financial support programs. University of Alberta students receiving government loans from Alberta Student Aid continue to demonstrate a high rate of loan repayment with a repayment rate of 95.9% which is above the Alberta average of 88.6% (the national repayment rate average is 91.1%).

12 $20,000 was written off at fiscal year end. This represents 3.5% of $572,253, which was the total amount of emergency loans issued in fiscal 2018/19 to both undergraduate and graduate students as the data cannot be disaggregated.
13 2019 Letter from Alberta Student Aid on Loan Repayment Rate.
2. DOMESTIC UNDERGRADUATE STUDENT FINANCIAL SUPPORT

2.1 OVERALL DOMESTIC UNDERGRADUATE FINANCIAL SUPPORT

Domestic\textsuperscript{14} students made up 85\% of our undergraduate student population\textsuperscript{15} and received 93\% of undergraduate financial support in fiscal 2018/19.

Government of Alberta merit-based programs\textsuperscript{16} are administered by the university and are earmarked for continuing students. These funds are for Alberta residents\textsuperscript{17}, and are tenable at any Alberta postsecondary institution. Government of Alberta merit-based funding (captured as part of scholarships) made up 34\% of total domestic undergraduate scholarships. This proportion remains constant year over year and represents the important partnership that exists between the University of Alberta and government in supporting students.

93\% (16,118) of all students receiving financial support in the 2018/19 fiscal year were domestic undergraduate students. Of these, 71\% (11,501) accessed government loan funding. This represents 42\% of all domestic undergraduate students.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 4: Allocation of Support among Domestic Undergraduates by Type of Financial Support</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Funding Source</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scholarship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bursary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repayable Emergency Loan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subtotal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Government Loan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Office of the Registrar

Spending on domestic bursaries increased by 36.6\% ($1,330,427), due to improvements in both application and assessment processing. This increase in bursaries may have contributed to the 5.1\% decrease in emergency loans ($18,921 less). Our increased ability to offer bursaries sooner indicates a positive trend for the university and supports effective enrolment management by supporting student retention efforts. The overall spending on domestic students from RO administered funding sources also increased by 11.6\% ($2,663,655) from 2017/18 in addition to a 7.1\% increase on upper year scholarships ($1,352,149).

\textsuperscript{14} Domestic status means Canadian Citizen or Permanent Resident.
\textsuperscript{15} 2018/19 Annual Report on Undergraduate Enrolment.
\textsuperscript{16} Government of Alberta merit-based funding reflects provincially funded merit-based awards (including the Jason Lang Scholarship, the Louise McKinney Post-Secondary Scholarship, the Jimmie Condon Athletic Scholarship, and the Indigenous Careers Award) but does not include government student loans. The recipient information for the Alexander Rutherford Scholarship is not captured by the University of Alberta and therefore is not included in this summary.
\textsuperscript{17} Definition of Alberta residents as defined by Alberta Student Aid differs from the university's definition of Alberta students (based on Origin Address in the student information system).
2.2 ORIGIN AT THE TIME OF APPLICATION, DOMESTIC UNDERGRADUATE

In 2018/19, 87%\(^{18}\) of all domestic undergraduate students listed an Alberta origin address in the student information system at the time of application. Alberta students received 87% of financial supports provided to domestic undergraduate students. Alberta students remain a priority for the university, and financial support programs will continue to be reviewed to ensure the resources available meet the needs of this vital demographic. Through continued dialogue with the Government of Alberta and participation on the Alberta Student Awards Personnel Association, the University of Alberta actively contributes to the development of robust support for Alberta students.

Table 5: Distribution of Financial Support to Domestic Undergraduate Students by Origin Address at Time of Application, 2018/19

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Origin(^{23})</th>
<th>Scholarship</th>
<th>Bursary</th>
<th>Repayable Emergency Loan</th>
<th>Government Loan</th>
<th>% of Total Funds</th>
<th>% of Recipients</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Edmonton Area [58%]</td>
<td>53.2%</td>
<td>40.6%</td>
<td>55.3%</td>
<td>53.8%</td>
<td>52.9%</td>
<td>56.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alberta excluding Edmonton Area [29%]</td>
<td>32.2%</td>
<td>39.3%</td>
<td>29.1%</td>
<td>35.0%</td>
<td>34.5%</td>
<td>32.3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada excluding Alberta [10%]</td>
<td>11.9%</td>
<td>14.9%</td>
<td>10.5%</td>
<td>7.0%</td>
<td>8.7%</td>
<td>7.9%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outside Canada [3%]</td>
<td>2.7%</td>
<td>5.2%</td>
<td>5.0%</td>
<td>4.2%</td>
<td>3.9%</td>
<td>3.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total Dollar Amount</strong></td>
<td><strong>$20,330,013</strong></td>
<td><strong>$4,967,514</strong></td>
<td><strong>$348,592</strong></td>
<td><strong>$60,466,059</strong></td>
<td><strong>$86,112,178</strong></td>
<td><strong>100.0%</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Office of the Registrar
Note: “Edmonton and Area” includes Edmonton and surrounding areas (i.e. Sherwood Park, St. Albert, Spruce Grove, Leduc, Fort Saskatchewan, Stony Plain, and Beaumont).

10% of domestic undergraduate students enrolled in 2018/19 were from outside of Alberta\(^{20}\), and received over $7.5M in funding. This group of students accessed need-based programs at a higher rate than their overall enrolment proportion, as they received 15% of all need-based funds distributed, a proportion that has slightly decreased (3% or $49,500) since the 2017/18 fiscal year. This disproportional access of need-based supports may be the result of increased costs to out-of-province students (e.g., moving away from home) or limitations on out-of-province loan funding (in most cases, out-of-province annual loan maximums are lower than those provided by the provincial loan program in Alberta\(^{21}\)). While their need-based funding was out of proportion with enrolment, they received 12% of merit-based funding, a rate closer to their enrolment and consistent with the proportion of merit-based funding from the 2017/18 fiscal year.

---

18 2018/19 Annual Report on Undergraduate Enrolment.
19 Percentage captured under Origin is the distribution as per the 2017/18 Annual Report on Undergraduate Enrolment.
20 2018/19 Annual Report on Undergraduate Enrolment.
21 The annual loan maximum for a single, independent Alberta student is ~$15,000, whereas the British Columbia and Saskatchewan maximum is $10,880.
Table 6: Allocation of Funds to Out-of-Province Students by Type of Support, 2018/19

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Funding Source</th>
<th>Number of Students</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Government Loan</td>
<td>820</td>
<td>$4,247,101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repayable Emergency Loan</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>$36,760</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bursary</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>$741,600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scholarship</td>
<td>596</td>
<td>$2,429,072</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td><strong>1,549</strong></td>
<td><strong>$7,454,533</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Office of the Registrar

The 2018/19 fiscal year saw an increase in spending on scholarships for out-of-province students ($248,101). This is because of the execution of new, renewable recruitment scholarships for top out-of-province students as part of the National Recruitment Strategy. As we work towards the fourth year of the National Recruitment Strategy, this trend will stabilize in the 2020/21 fiscal year.

2.3 ALLOCATION OF ENTRANCE SCHOLARSHIPS, DOMESTIC UNDERGRADUATE

Entrance scholarships are defined as financial support given to a university student entering an undergraduate degree program directly from high school. Currently, most domestic entrance scholarships are one-time payments (i.e., non-renewable). Admission average requirements to receive the largest domestic entrance scholarship, Academic Excellence, changed in the 2018/19 fiscal year. This reduced the number of eligible entrance students who would receive an Academic Excellence scholarship offer. This change was made to mitigate increases in spending above available budgets in response to the trend of increases in highly academically qualified applicants (see Figure 4). While demand is growing, capacity remains unchanged, which creates pressures for enrolment that need to be actively managed. The university continues to monitor enrolment and admission trends to ensure we remain responsible stewards of limited resources.
As a result of changes to the Academic Excellence scholarships and increasing admission averages, there was a decrease in the total spend and total number of students receiving entrance scholarships. A total of $3.68M\textsuperscript{22} was awarded through domestic entrance scholarships (renewable and non renewable programs), a decrease of $301,394 to 220 fewer students. The average amount for domestic students with an admission average of 90 to 94.9% was $4,265 while students with a 95% or higher average received, on average, $6,974. Both average amounts changed slightly from 2017/18 ($3,292 and $7,447 respectively). In 2018/19, 550 students with admission averages over 90% received scholarships, a decrease from 2017/18 when 757 students with similar admission averages received scholarships. This shift was likely a result of the change in structure for the admission-based program to better align with available funding.

317 domestic students with averages below 90% received entrance scholarships in 2018/19. This is expected as some entrance scholarship programs also include additional criteria such as leadership and community engagement. These 317 students make up 37% of total entrance scholarship recipients, an increase in proportion from the distribution in 2017/18 (which was 330 students and 30%). In order to build a diverse class of students, other financial support programs such as entrance scholarships will continue to be an important tool to support our student recruitment strategies with increased attention to priority groups of prospective students, including out-of-province students and top academic achievers.

\textsuperscript{22} This report does not currently include the Alexander Rutherford Scholarship provided to entrance students by the Government of Alberta. As a result, the Government of Alberta entrance scholarship total is not included in this summary.
Figure 5: Allocation of Entrance Scholarship by Merit among Registered High School Applicants, 2018/19

Number of Recipients | Total Amount | % of Total Amount
--- | --- | ---
179 | $1,248,350 | 33.96%
371 | $1,582,374 | 43.04%
182 | $551,472 | 15.00%
93 | $208,860 | 5.68%
42 | $85,412 | 2.32%

Source: Office of the Registrar
2.4 ALLOCATION BY PROGRAM YEAR, DOMESTIC UNDERGRADUATE

The distribution of financial support remains consistent year-over-year in that both programs and criteria (need- vs merit-based funding) remained stable. This distribution continued to see students in the upper years of their program use need-based financial supports at a greater rate than students in the earlier years of the program. In the 2018/19 fiscal year, the number of domestic students supported by bursaries increased from 563 to 698. This increase in bursary spending is due to improvements in both application and assessment processing and is an increase above 2016/17 where 681 domestic undergraduates were supported by bursaries.

Table 7: Ratio of Allocation of Resources by Year of Program

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year of Study</th>
<th>Scholarship</th>
<th>Bursary</th>
<th>Repayable Emergency Loan</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>% of Total</th>
<th>Number of Students</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>% of Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Year 1</td>
<td>$5,274,549</td>
<td>$589,800</td>
<td>$41,542</td>
<td>$5,905,891</td>
<td>23.03%</td>
<td>1,436</td>
<td>$5,944,827</td>
<td>25.87%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 2-5</td>
<td>$14,882,240</td>
<td>$4,256,514</td>
<td>$260,100</td>
<td>$19,398,854</td>
<td>75.64%</td>
<td>6,246</td>
<td>$16,830,563</td>
<td>73.23%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special/Visiting Students</td>
<td>$173,224</td>
<td>$121,200</td>
<td>$46,950</td>
<td>$341,374</td>
<td>1.33%</td>
<td>102</td>
<td>$207,075</td>
<td>0.90%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>$20,330,013</td>
<td>$4,967,514</td>
<td>$348,592</td>
<td>$25,646,119</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>7,784</td>
<td>$22,982,465</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Office of the Registrar
Note: Percentages shown will not add up to 100 per cent due to rounding.

2.5 GOVERNMENT STUDENT LOANS, DOMESTIC UNDERGRADUATE

11,501 domestic students received financial support through the provision of Canadian government loans (both federal and provincial) for a total of $60,479,667. In 2018/19, 44% of Alberta students enrolled at the University of Alberta were funded by government loans, compared to 27% of their out-of-province counterparts. This may be because the eligibility requirements of Alberta’s loan program make it more easily accessible than other provinces’. 42% of all domestic undergraduate students accessed government loans. While this is above the national average of 38%23, Alberta government loans are easier to access because parental contributions are not included in the financial need calculation.

In the 2018/19 year, 506 more undergraduate students (5% increase) received government loan funding, with the total funding issued through government loans increasing by $2.5M (4%).

---

23 Source: CASFAA National Benchmarking Survey 2018
Table 8: Expense by Year of Program and Type of Support, Amount, 2018/19

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year of Study</th>
<th>Alberta Student Loan (+Canada Student Loan)</th>
<th>Canada Student Loan Only</th>
<th>Out-of-Province Student Loan (+Canada Student Loan)</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>% of Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number of Students</td>
<td>Amount</td>
<td>Number of Students</td>
<td>Amount</td>
<td>Number of Students</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 1</td>
<td>1,884</td>
<td>$11,049,877</td>
<td>594</td>
<td>$1,873,866</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 2</td>
<td>2,135</td>
<td>$13,798,645</td>
<td>630</td>
<td>$2,213,900</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 3</td>
<td>1,861</td>
<td>$11,711,199</td>
<td>737</td>
<td>$2,718,860</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 4-5</td>
<td>1,673</td>
<td>$9,857,191</td>
<td>1,365</td>
<td>$4,248,238</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special/Visiting Students</td>
<td>116</td>
<td>$640,707</td>
<td>226</td>
<td>$466,190</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>7,669</td>
<td>$47,057,620</td>
<td>3,552</td>
<td>$11,521,054</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Office of the Registrar

The university seeks to capture additional information about University of Alberta students receiving government loans. Of particular interest is developing a better understanding of the needs and numbers of low-income students (as defined by the government loan assessment) so appropriate financial supports to address access and affordability may be explored over the next 18 months.

Although there haven’t been any increases in domestic undergraduate tuition and fees since 2015, there have been fluctuations in the number of government loans remitted to undergraduate students which seems to suggest these numbers are not directly interconnected.

We continue to look for ways to harvest available data to guide decision-making and program development to ensure robust financial support programs are available to support all student demographics, including low income and first generation students.

Figure 6: Comparison of Changes in the Average Tuition to Government Loans (2016/17-2018/19)

Source: Office of the Registrar
3. INDIGENOUS UNDERGRADUATE STUDENT FINANCIAL SUPPORT
3.1 INDIGENOUS UNDERGRADUATE

Indigenous students make up approximately 3.7%\(^{24}\) of the domestic undergraduate population and the success of this group of students is a priority for the university. Indigenous learners face unique financial challenges and barriers, so dedicated and robust financial support programs are required to facilitate the For the Public Good commitment to recruiting and supporting Alberta and Canada’s Indigenous population.

According to the 2018/19 Annual Report on Undergraduate Enrolment, the university has 1,175 self-declared Indigenous students. Of these 1,175 students, 71% (837 students) are currently receiving financial support (not including third-party/First Nations, Métis, or Inuit sponsorship).

Note: Indigenous data is based on self-identification and therefore may under represent the true number of Indigenous students at the university.

Table 9: Allocation of Funds to Indigenous students by type of support

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Funding Source</th>
<th>Number of Students</th>
<th>Total Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Government Loan</td>
<td>358 393 443 ↑</td>
<td>$1,746,537 $1,728,134 $1,905,454 ↑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scholarship</td>
<td>412 423 556 ↑</td>
<td>$1,558,922 $1,593,697 $2,417,320 ↑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bursary</td>
<td>35 40 55 ↑</td>
<td>$190,600 $211,905 $369,086 ↑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repayable Emergency Loan</td>
<td>50 62 52 ↓</td>
<td>$90,860 $97,568 $111,227 ↑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>855 918 1,106 ↑</td>
<td>$3,586,919 $3,631,304 $4,803,087 ↑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Office of the Registrar

Funded by the Government of Alberta and administered by the RO, the Indigenous Careers Award (ICA) distributed a total of $1,472,000 to 377 students in the 2018/19 fiscal year, an increase of $630,000 to 161 additional recipients since 2017/18. The ICA program continues to account for over 60% of the total scholarship funding provided to Indigenous undergraduate students\(^{25}\).

\(^{24}\) 2018/19 Annual Report on Undergraduate Enrolment.

\(^{25}\) The Indigenous Careers Award (ICA) is an Alberta government-funded award that is restricted to students in certain areas of study as determined by the Alberta government.
Table 10: Support to Indigenous students, 2018/19

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Funding Source</th>
<th>Number of Indigenous Students</th>
<th>Total Undergraduate Financial Support</th>
<th>Total Indigenous Financial Support</th>
<th>% of Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scholarship</td>
<td>556</td>
<td>$24,247,673</td>
<td>$2,417,320</td>
<td>9.97%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bursary</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>$5,666,738</td>
<td>$369,086</td>
<td>6.51%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repayable Emergency Loan</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>$377,552</td>
<td>$111,227</td>
<td>29.46%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Government Loan</td>
<td>443</td>
<td>$60,466,059</td>
<td>$1,905,454</td>
<td>3.15%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td><strong>1,106</strong></td>
<td><strong>$90,758,022</strong></td>
<td><strong>$4,803,087</strong></td>
<td><strong>5.29%</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Office of the Registrar
Note: Total recipients includes double counting.

The distribution of Indigenous financial support as a percentage of total undergraduate financial support increased moderately across all financial support types in 2018/19, with the most significant increase in scholarships as noted above. Repayable emergency loans increased for a second consecutive year. This may be the result of increased awareness of the program, but it might also be a signal for the need to evaluate the current need-based programs to ensure Indigenous students are receiving the appropriate financial support.

Of the $4.8M in financial support issued to Indigenous students, 64% ($3.1M) was awarded to students who self-declared as Métis, followed by Status First Nations at 26% ($1.2M). These rates are not consistent with enrolment rates of Indigenous students, which saw 51% identified as Métis and 36% identified as Status First Nations.

SFS continues to work collaboratively with First Peoples’ House (FPH) to increase Indigenous student participation in financial literacy programs. We support Indigenous students through the allocation of $200,000 annually to Indigenous student financial supports, which includes entrance, continuing, and emergency financial supports. In addition, a Financial Support Advisor provides in-person support to Indigenous students at FPH two days per week. The RO has also increased frequency of financial literacy programs and information sessions provided.

We continue to support and partner with the Office of Advancement to establish fundraising initiatives for this audience. This will help address the financial support funding gaps facing Indigenous students and support the university’s priority to recruit and support the evolving needs of this student group.
4. INTERNATIONAL UNDERGRADUATE STUDENT FINANCIAL SUPPORT
4.1 OVERALL INTERNATIONAL UNDERGRADUATE FINANCIAL SUPPORT

International students recruited abroad and those who attended high school in Canada may receive financial supports which are primarily merit-based and funded by international differential fees. These financial supports an important recruitment tool. The expectation from both the Government of Canada and the university is that international students should come to study with the ability to fund the full cost of their education; as such, less emphasis is placed on need-based funding for this group. The RO works with UAI to administer merit-based programs and need-based programs for international students.

1,011 or 21% of international students (5.8% of total undergraduate recipients) received financial supports. Overall spending on international students in 2018/19 decreased by $703,742 (see Table 11). The average amount for international financial supports rose by 4.7% from 2017/18 (from $4,300 to $4,502); however, the overall decrease is attributed a decrease in international entrance scholarships spending ($796,375).

A significant portion of international scholarships are admission-based with offer rates based on historical acceptance rates. In 2018/19, the type and value of international entrance scholarships remained unchanged, however there was an unanticipated decrease in scholarship acceptance rates.

Funding for international students through bursary programs increased by $114,249 (20%) in 2018/19, as a result of more funding made available for international need-based financial support. The RO and UAI continue to collaborate on need-based financial support programs, to ensure international students in financial need are able to access the resources necessary to complete their degree program.

Table 11: Allocation of Funds to International Students

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Funding Source</th>
<th>Number of Students</th>
<th>Total Amount</th>
<th>Trend</th>
<th>2016/17</th>
<th>2017/18</th>
<th>2018/19</th>
<th>Trend</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scholarship</td>
<td>1,143</td>
<td>940</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>$4,017,905</td>
<td>$4,714,036</td>
<td>$3,917,660</td>
<td>↓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bursary</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>↑</td>
<td>$732,650</td>
<td>$584,975</td>
<td>$699,224</td>
<td>↑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repayable Emergency Loan</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>$55,516</td>
<td>$50,575</td>
<td>$28,960</td>
<td>↓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subtotal</td>
<td>1,242</td>
<td>1,032</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>$4,806,071</td>
<td>$5,349,586</td>
<td>$4,645,844</td>
<td>↓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Office of the Registrar
Note: Figure represents funding from University Operating, Donor Endowed, Donor Annual, Government of Alberta, and Repayable Emergency Loans administered by both the RO and UAI. Total recipients includes double counting.
4.2 ORIGIN AT THE TIME OF APPLICATION, INTERNATIONAL UNDERGRADUATE

The diversity of countries represented by students who received financial supports is relatively unchanged from 2017/18. China remains the most represented country of citizenship among international students, and the country whose students received the most financial support despite an observed decrease in enrolment proportion. Compared to 2015/16 when 51% of financial supports issued went to students from China, the percentage of financial supports to students from China decreased to 37% in 2018/19. This change reflects successful recruitment efforts to diversify the international population on campus, while maintaining support for international students from all regions.

Table 12: Top Source Countries by Student Citizenship Receiving Financial Support, 2018/19

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Scholarship</th>
<th>Bursary</th>
<th>Repayable Emergency Loan</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>% of Total</th>
<th>Number of Students</th>
<th>% of Total Undergraduate Enrolment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>$1,610,131</td>
<td>$117,995</td>
<td>$6,900</td>
<td>$1,735,026</td>
<td>37.3%</td>
<td>543</td>
<td>67.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>India</td>
<td>$431,615</td>
<td>$89,240</td>
<td>$7,100</td>
<td>$527,955</td>
<td>11.4%</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>5.3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bangladesh</td>
<td>$237,500</td>
<td>$112,765</td>
<td>$1,100</td>
<td>$351,365</td>
<td>7.6%</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>2.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nigeria</td>
<td>$290,400</td>
<td>$113,300</td>
<td>$2,460</td>
<td>$406,160</td>
<td>8.7%</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>2.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vietnam</td>
<td>$167,500</td>
<td>$11,010</td>
<td>$0</td>
<td>$178,510</td>
<td>3.8%</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>1.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Countries</td>
<td>$1,180,515</td>
<td>$254,914</td>
<td>$11,400</td>
<td>$1,446,828</td>
<td>31.1%</td>
<td>243</td>
<td>20.3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td><strong>$3,917,660</strong></td>
<td><strong>$699,224</strong></td>
<td><strong>$28,960</strong></td>
<td><strong>$4,645,844</strong></td>
<td><strong>100.0%</strong></td>
<td><strong>1,013</strong></td>
<td><strong>100.0%</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Office of the Registrar

Overall, 1.9% of all international undergraduate students received need-based financial supports in the 2018/19 year. While 83% of need-based funding went to students from countries other than China, this is a relatively small percentage of the total revenue received from these countries. The RO and UAI are working collaboratively to evolve need-based programs to support the changing needs of our international students as we pursue the goal of increased diversity in our learning environment.
4.3 ALLOCATION OF ENTRANCE SCHOLARSHIPS, INTERNATIONAL UNDERGRADUATE

Current international entrance scholarship programs continued to focus on high school students entering the university with an admission average of at least 85%. Spending on international entrance scholarships decreased by $796,375 compared to 2017/18, with 76% of that decrease in spending distributed to students with admission averages above 90%.

The decrease in entrance scholarship spending is the result of changes in applicant behaviour in terms of scholarship acceptance and yield in 2018/19 that impacted the total number of students and international scholarships accepted.

Figure 7: Allocation of Entrance Scholarship by Merit among Registered High School International Applicants, 2018/19

Source: Office of the Registrar
4.4 ALLOCATION BY PROGRAM YEAR, INTERNATIONAL UNDERGRADUATE

When examining need-based programs for international students, it should be noted the criteria for bursary eligibility for this group differs from those used to assess need for their domestic counterparts. International students must demonstrate a change in financial situation due to exceptional circumstances from their initial study permit application. Both the Government and the university expect international students to cover the costs of their education, yet sometimes individual student circumstances change.

In 2018/19 spending on international bursaries increased by 20% ($114,249) as a result of more funding made available for international need-based financial support. Bursary funding is issued through both the RO supplementary bursary program and the UAI International Undergraduate Student Bursary (IUSB) program.

Table 13: Allocation Amounts by Year of Program

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year of Study</th>
<th>Scholarship</th>
<th>Bursary</th>
<th>Repayable Emergency Loan</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>% of Total</th>
<th>Number of Recipients</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>% of Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Year 1</td>
<td>$2,466,300</td>
<td>$3,200</td>
<td>$460</td>
<td>$2,469,960</td>
<td>53.2%</td>
<td>528</td>
<td>$3,410,574</td>
<td>63.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 2-5</td>
<td>$1,449,360</td>
<td>$691,524</td>
<td>$28,500</td>
<td>$2,169,384</td>
<td>46.7%</td>
<td>482</td>
<td>$1,921,112</td>
<td>35.9%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special/Visiting Students</td>
<td>$2,000</td>
<td>$4,500</td>
<td>$6,500</td>
<td>$6,500</td>
<td>0.1%</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>$17,900</td>
<td>0.3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td><strong>$3,917,660</strong></td>
<td><strong>$699,224</strong></td>
<td><strong>$28,960</strong></td>
<td><strong>$4,645,844</strong></td>
<td><strong>100.0%</strong></td>
<td><strong>1,013</strong></td>
<td><strong>$5,349,586</strong></td>
<td><strong>100.0%</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Office of the Registrar

Note: Percentages shown will not add up to 100 per cent due to rounding.

---

26 The International Undergraduate Student Bursary program is administered by UAI (application, assessment and selection facilitated by UAI); however, payments disbursed to students are facilitated by SFS. This bursary program is funded by differential fees and comes from an annual allocation to UAI’s international bursary programs.
CLOSING REMARKS

The University of Alberta is committed to ensuring that qualified students can attend the university through the provision of robust student financial supports. We recognize that access to affordable education is a shared responsibility between the University, the student, and government, and we will continue to work with all of our stakeholders to support our community of diverse and exceptional students from Alberta and around the world.

The Office of the Registrar has an ongoing commitment to developing and delivering effective financial literacy and money management programs for our students. The goal of these programs is to empower students to understand and improve their unique financial situations. Last year, more than 50 financial literacy presentations were hosted on and off campus, including presentations to Edmonton and area high schools, conversations with USchool\textsuperscript{27}, and on-campus workshops. In addition, students accessed one-on-one advising about financial management resources and tools at over 600 booked advising appointments.

This commitment has made us a leader in this field both for financial education and loan repayment. The 2018 CASFAA Benchmarking Survey\textsuperscript{28} identified that only 56% of institutions provide any financial wellness and money management services to their students, while we provide a comprehensive and popular set of services. In addition, University of Alberta graduates have among the highest Canada Student Loans repayment rates in the province, an indicator that our students are well informed about their student loans and the expectations for repayment. We will continue to engage in activities and provide services that build student financial literacy and money management skills.

Looking ahead, we have identified several areas of focus for undergraduate student financial support in response to the changing post-secondary landscape. This year, we will be monitoring and adjusting our international financial support programs as the university transitions to the new international tuition guarantee\textsuperscript{29}. Working with our partners in the faculties and University of Alberta International, we will continue to support our institutional enrolment goals through strategic allocation of funds as the Fall 2020 recruitment cycle unfolds. Over the short and long term, we will continuously improve our existing financial supports to align with the institutional enrolment management goal of supporting multiple dimensions of diversity in our student population. Over the coming years, we will continue to work with our colleagues in Advancement to encourage the development of funds that allow us to diversify our student supports, with the shared goal of creating increased funding capacity where we have identified gaps or inequities. As we move forward with implementing these priorities, the RO will continue to exercise fiscal responsibility to ensure that we meet our responsibilities to all stakeholders, including students, government, and donors.

\textsuperscript{27} USchool is a program created by the University Senate that invites Grade 4-9 students from socially vulnerable schools to visit campus for a week and gain exposure to post-secondary education.

\textsuperscript{28} 2018 Canadian Association of Student Financial Aid Administrators Benchmarking Survey

\textsuperscript{29} Starting in 2020, the U of A will move to a program-based international student tuition model, which will provide all incoming undergraduate international students with a tuition guarantee. This change stems from requirements imposed by amendments to the Post-Secondary Learning Act from Bill 19, which requires predictability in the tuition of international students.
APPENDIX A
SUMMARY OF STUDENT FINANCIAL SUPPORT PROGRAMS

SFS programs fall into four categories:

1. Merit-based Funding
Merit-based funding refers to scholarships and awards and is distributed on the basis of academic performance\(^{30}\) and/or leadership achievements. Merit-based ‘entrance’ awards (for incoming high school students) are primarily funded by faculty and university operating dollars, with the majority being selected by SFS in coordination with faculties. Merit-based awards for continuing students are predominantly supported by donors, with recipients selected by faculties/departments. The Government of Alberta also has a significant Alberta Scholarships program for Alberta residents\(^{31}\).

2. Need-based Funding
Need-based funding refers to financial need (as assessed by SFS). Our need-based funding is provided through two programs: the Supplementary Bursary program and the repayable Emergency Loans Program\(^{32}\). The majority of need-based funding is distributed through the bursary program, which provides non-repayable funds to students experiencing a financial shortfall during the academic year. We also distribute repayable emergency loans, which are issued for emergency situations and must be repaid. In order for a domestic student to receive bursary funding, they must demonstrate they have already accessed all other financial resources available to them, including government student loans. A financial need assessment is performed by an SFS advisor, which includes a Moderate Standard of Living (MSOL) calculation that attempts to address the gap between loan funding and actual costs of attending the university. The MSOL calculation is reviewed annually and follows the Government of Alberta’s provincial loan guidelines and is adjusted to more accurately reflect living costs.

3. Government Student Loans
Student loans are administered jointly by the provincial and federal governments; the university does not administer government student loans. However, the RO provides students with support for the loan application process, as well as general advising on student loans (other units on campus provide student loan advising as well). Aggregate information on total loan funding from the Government of Alberta is available, but the individual breakdown of the funding per student is not captured. This is a major gap in our ability to capture a comprehensive view of the financial supports available, hindering our ability to identify funding opportunities and challenges facing students. These limitations are primarily a result of the longstanding university process for collecting information on each provincial and federal program. Moving forward, our aim is to gain more insight into loan disbursement at the U of A and beyond.

Note: SFS also provides administrative support for undergraduate summer research awards (NSERC USRA, Roger S Smith, and other Med Summer Research). As these are paid summer employment, they are not included in this report.

---

\(^{30}\) Academic performance refers to minimum admission average or GPA thresholds. For awards, normally the minimum GPA is 2.0 or admission to a university program, while the minimum GPA required for scholarships is 3.5 (or top 10% of comparable students) or 80% admission average.

\(^{31}\) Definition of Alberta residents as defined by Albert Student Aid and is not currently captured in University of Alberta data and does not equate to the definition of Alberta students (based on Origin Address in the student information system) used in later sections.

\(^{32}\) Some merit-based awards and scholarships include secondary criteria such as financial need; however, the assessment of financial need of those awards and scholarships is not equivalent to that performed in the need-based programs.
4. Financial Literacy and Outreach
The RO engages in activities and provides services aimed at improving students’ financial literacy and money management skills, with the goal of empowering students to understand and improve their unique financial situations. Last year, over 50 presentations were hosted on and off campus, including at Edmonton and area high schools, at U School classes, and financial literacy workshops. In addition, the RO hosted the first Financial Literacy Week that reached over 600 students offering a variety of sessions providing additional educational opportunities around financial literacy for students. Over 600 advising appointments were booked last year, providing students with one-on-one advice about resources and tools available to them to manage their finances. The RO will continue to support its financial literacy portfolio to increase on-campus engagement and reach more prospective and incoming students.
2018 – 2019 UNDERGRADUATE STUDENT FINANCIAL SUPPORT OVERVIEW

The Office of the Registrar is committed to the provision of robust student financial support programs to benefit Albertan, out-of-province, Indigenous, and international undergraduate students.

The Undergraduate Student Financial Support Overview is a snapshot of student funding for the 2018 – 2019 fiscal year. A supplement to the full Annual Report on Undergraduate Student Financial Support, this provides a high-level view of our financial support programs and the students who access them.

Our Funding, Our Undergraduate Students

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FUNDING SOURCE</th>
<th>NEED-BASED</th>
<th>MERIT-BASED</th>
<th>TOTAL AMOUNT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DONOR</td>
<td>$2,496,734</td>
<td>$8,655,033</td>
<td>$11,151,767</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOVERNMENT</td>
<td>$60,479,667</td>
<td>$6,958,100</td>
<td>$67,437,767</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNIVERSITY</td>
<td>$3,547,956</td>
<td>$8,634,540</td>
<td>$12,182,096</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXTERNAL FUNDING¹</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$844,171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td>$66,523,957</td>
<td>$24,247,673</td>
<td>$91,615,802</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹External Funding is contributed and selected by external organizations, but processed by the RO.

²Of the $91.6M, the RO administered $30M in financial supports. The additional amount ($61.6M) includes government need-based funding and externally selected financial supports.

For more information, contact:
Office of the Registrar 780-492-3113 | ualberta.ca/registrar

UNIVERSITY OF ALBERTA
OFFICE OF THE REGISTRAR
2018 – 2019 UNDERGRADUATE STUDENT FINANCIAL SUPPORT OVERVIEW

ABOUT OUR UNDERGRADUATE FINANCIAL SUPPORT RECIPIENTS

17,289 = 53.9%
TOTAL RECIPENTS
OF TOTAL UNDERGRADUATE ENROLMENT

YEAR 1*
24% = 25.4%
OF FUNDING
OF TOTAL ENROLMENT

YEAR 2 – 5*
74.4% = 66.2%
OF FUNDING
OF TOTAL ENROLMENT

* Funding and total enrolment of special and visiting students is not included in the totals above.

DOMESTIC UNDERGRADUATE STUDENTS

16,118 = 41%
TOTAL RECIPENTS
OF TOTAL DOMESTIC UNDERGRADUATE ENROLMENT

$86M
RECEIVED IN FUNDING

87%
OF DOMESTIC FUNDING WENT TO ALBERTA STUDENTS

INDIGENOUS UNDERGRADUATE STUDENTS

837 = 71%
TOTAL RECIPENTS
OF TOTAL INDIGENOUS UNDERGRADUATE ENROLMENT

$4.8M
RECEIVED IN FUNDING

WE DELIVER COLLABORATIVE INITIATIVES TO SUPPORT OUR INDIGENOUS STUDENTS THROUGH OUR RECIPROCAL RELATIONSHIP WITH FIRST PEOPLES’ HOUSE (FPH).

INTERNATIONAL UNDERGRADUATE STUDENTS

1,011 = 21%
TOTAL RECIPENTS
OF TOTAL INTERNATIONAL UNDERGRADUATE ENROLMENT

$4.6M
RECEIVED IN FUNDING

64
COUNTRIES REPRESENTED BY STUDENTS RECEIVING FUNDING

For more information, contact:
Office of the Registrar 780-492-3113 | ualberta.ca/registrar